Disability Discrimination Act 1995

1995 CHAPTER 50

An Act to make it unlawful to discriminate against disabled persons in connection with employment, the provision of goods, facilities and services or the disposal or management of premises; to make provision about the employment of disabled persons; and to establish a National Disability Council. [8th November 1995]

F1Be it enacted by the Queen’s most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

Extent Information
E1 Act extends to Northern Ireland subject to modifications: see s. 70(6), Sch. 8.

Textual Amendments
F1 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)
C1 Act restricted (E.W.S.) (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 17, ss. 21, 46 (with s. 38)
Act: transfer of certain functions (N.I.) (1.12.1999) by S.R. 1999/481, art. 8(a), Sch. 6 Pt. 1
Act (except ss. 8, 9(4)(d), 10(2)(b)): transfer of certain functions (N.I.) (1.12.1999) by S.R. 1999/481, art. 4(a), Sch. 2 Pt. 1


C3 Act: applied (with modifications) (S.) (3.11.2008) by The Mental Health (England and Wales Cross-border transfer: patients subject to requirements other than detention) (Scotland) Regulations (S.S.I. 2008/356), {regs. 2, 33(1)}
PART I
DISABLED PERSONS (COUNTY OF DURHAM) ORDER 2003

PART I
DISABLED PERSONS (COUNTY OF DURHAM) ORDER 2003

1. Meaning of “disability” and “disabled person”.

(1) Subject to the provisions of Schedule 1, a person has a disability for the purposes of this Act and Part III of the 2005 Order if he has a physical or mental impairment which has a substantial and long-term adverse effect on his ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities.

(2) In this Act and Part III of the 2005 Order “disabled person” means a person who has a disability.

Textual Amendments

F2 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)


Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C6 S. 1 applied (N.I.) (6.4.2005) by The Special Educational Needs and Disability (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1117 (N.I. 6)), arts. 1, 2(3)

Commencement Information

I1 S. 1 wholly in force at 30.5.1996; s. 1 not in force at Royal Assent see. s. 70(3); s. 1 in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(a); s. 1 in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(a)

2. Past disabilities.

(1) The provisions of this Part and Parts II and III of the 2005 Order apply in relation to a person who has had a disability as they apply in relation to a person who has that disability.

(2) Those provisions are subject to the modifications made by Schedule 2.

(3) Any regulations or order made under this Act or Part III of the 2005 Order may include provision with respect to persons who have had a disability.
(4) In any proceedings under Part II [Footnote 8, III or VA] of this Act [Footnote 9 or Part III of the 2005 Order], the question whether a person had a disability at a particular time (“the relevant time”) shall be determined, for the purposes of this section, as if the provisions of, or made under, this Act [Footnote 9 or Part III of the 2005 Order] in force when the act complained of was done had been in force at the relevant time.

(5) The relevant time may be a time before the passing of this Act [Footnote 10] or (as the case may be) the making of the 2005 Order].

3 Guidance.

[Footnote 11][Footnote 12] The Office may issue guidance about matters to be taken into account in determining whether a person is a disabled person.]
(1) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (A1), the Office may, in particular,

(a) whether an impairment has a substantial adverse effect on a person’s ability
to carry out normal day-to-day activities; or
(b) whether such an impairment has a long-term effect.

(2) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (A1), guidance about the matters
mentioned in subsection (1) may, among other things, give examples of—

(a) effects which it would be reasonable, in relation to particular activities, to
regard for purposes of this Act as substantial adverse effects;
(b) effects which it would not be reasonable, in relation to particular activities, to
regard for such purposes as substantial adverse effects;
(c) substantial adverse effects which it would be reasonable to regard, for such
purposes, as long-term;
(d) substantial adverse effects which it would not be reasonable to regard, for
such purposes, as long-term.

(3) A tribunal or court determining, for any purpose of this Act or Part III of the 2005
Order, whether a person is a disabled person, shall take into account any guidance
which appears to it to be relevant.

(4) In preparing a draft of any guidance, the Department shall consult such persons as it
considers appropriate.

(5) Where the Department proposes to issue any guidance, the Department shall publish
a draft of it, consider any representations that are made to the Department about the
draft and, if the Department thinks it appropriate, modify its proposals in the light of
any of those representations.

(6) If the Department decides to proceed with any proposed guidance, the Department
shall lay a draft of it before the Assembly.

(7) If, within the statutory period, the Assembly resolves not to approve the draft, the
Department shall take no further steps in relation to the proposed guidance.

(8) If no such resolution is made within the statutory period, the Department shall issue
the guidance in the form of its draft.

(9) The guidance shall come into force on such date as the Department may by order
appoint.

(10) Subsection (7) does not prevent a new draft of the proposed guidance being laid before
the Assembly.

(11) The Department may—
(a) from time to time revise the whole or any part of any guidance and re-issue it;
(b) by order revoke any guidance.

(12) In this section—
“the Department” means the Department of Economic Development;
“guidance” means guidance issued by the Department under this section
and includes guidance which has been revised and re-issued;
“statutory period” has the meaning assigned to it by section 41(2) of the
Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954.]
Part II – THE EMPLOYMENT FIELD AND DISTRICT COUNCILS and members of locally-electable authorities

Textual Amendments


F19 Pt. II heading: words inserted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 3(5); S.R. 2007/430, art. 2(c)

F20 Pt. 2 heading: words inserted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 4; S.I 2005/2774, (art. 3(j))
Part II – THE EMPLOYMENT FIELD AND DISTRICT COUNCILS

and members of locally-electable authorities

Modification etc. (not altering text)

C7 Pt. II applied (7.10.2013) by Crime and Courts Act 2013 (c. 22), s. 61(2), Sch. 4 para. 4(1)(2)(b); S.I. 2013/1682, art. 3(k)

Textual Amendments


3A Meaning of “discrimination”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F22 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3B Meaning of “harassment”

For the purposes of this Part, a person subjects a disabled person to harassment where, for a reason which relates to the disabled person’s disability, he engages in unwanted conduct which has the purpose or effect of—
(a) violating the disabled person’s dignity, or
(b) creating an intimidating, hostile, degrading, humiliating or offensive environment for him.

Conduct shall be regarded as having the effect referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of subsection (1) only if, having regard to all the circumstances, including in particular the perception of the disabled person, it should reasonably be considered as having that effect.

Textual Amendments

F23 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A–49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F24 Ss. 4-4F and cross-headings substituted for ss. 4-6 and preceding cross-heading (E.W.S) (3.7.2003 for certain purposes and 1.10.2004 otherwise) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1673), regs. 1(2)(3), 5

F28(1) It is unlawful for an employer to discriminate against a disabled person –
(a) in the arrangements which he makes for the purpose of determining to whom he should offer employment;
(b) in the terms on which he offers that person employment; or
(c) by refusing to offer, or deliberately not offering, him employment.

(2) It is unlawful for an employer to discriminate against a disabled person whom he employs –
(a) in the terms of employment which he affords him;
(b) in the opportunities which he affords him for promotion, a transfer, training or receiving any other benefit;
(c) by refusing to afford him, or deliberately not affording him, any such opportunity; or
(d) by dismissing him, or subjecting him to any other detriment.

(3) It is also unlawful for an employer, in relation to employment by him, to subject to harassment –
(a) a disabled person whom he employs; or
(b) a disabled person who has applied to him for employment.

(4) Subsection (2) does not apply to benefits of any description if the employer is concerned with the provision (whether or not for payment) of benefits of that description to the public, or to a section of the public which includes the employee in question, unless –
(a) that provision differs in a material respect from the provision of the benefits by the employer to his employees;
(b) the provision of the benefits to the employee in question is regulated by his contract of employment; or
(c) the benefits relate to training.

(5) The reference in subsection (2)(d) to the dismissal of a person includes a reference –
(a) to the termination of that person’s employment by the expiration of any period (including a period expiring by reference to an event or circumstance), not being a termination immediately after which the employment is renewed on the same terms; and
(b) to the termination of that person’s employment by any act of his (including the giving of notice) in circumstances such that he is entitled to terminate it without notice by reason of the conduct of the employer.

(6) This section applies only in relation to employment at an establishment in Northern Ireland.]
Employers: duty to make adjustments

(1) Where –

(a) a provision, criterion or practice applied by or on behalf of an employer, or
(b) any physical feature of premises occupied by the employer,

places the disabled person concerned at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled, it is the duty of the employer to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to prevent the provision, criterion or practice, or feature, having that effect.

(2) In subsection (1), “the disabled person concerned” means –

(a) in the case of a provision, criterion or practice for determining to whom employment should be offered, any disabled person who is, or has notified the employer that he may be, an applicant for that employment;

(b) in any other case, a disabled person who is –

(i) an applicant for the employment concerned, or
(ii) an employee of the employer concerned.

(3) Nothing in this section imposes any duty on an employer in relation to a disabled person if the employer does not know, and could not reasonably be expected to know –

(a) in the case of an applicant or potential applicant, that the disabled person concerned is, or may be, an applicant for the employment; or

(b) in any case, that that person has a disability and is likely to be affected in the way mentioned in subsection (1).]
Meaning of “discrimination”

Duty of employer to make adjustments.

Exemption for small businesses.

Contract workers
4B **Contract workers** E+W+S

---

### Extent Information

**E6** This section extends to England, Wales and Scotland only until 1.10.2010; a separate s. 4B exists for Northern Ireland only from 21.2.2004.

### Textual Amendments

**F36** Ss. 4-4F and cross-headings substituted (E.W.S.) for ss. 4-6 and preceding cross-heading (3.7.2003 for certain purposes and 1.10.2004 otherwise) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1673), regs. 1(2)(3), 5(1)

**F37** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

### Textual Amendments

**F782** 4B **Contract workers** N.I.

(1) It is unlawful for a principal, in relation to contract work, to discriminate against a disabled person who is a contract worker (a “disabled contract worker”) —

(a) in the terms on which he allows him to do that work;
(b) by not allowing him to do it or continue to do it;
(c) in the way he affords him access to any benefits or by refusing or deliberately omitting to afford him access to them; or
(d) by subjecting him to any other detriment.

(2) It is also unlawful for a principal, in relation to contract work, to subject a disabled contract worker to harassment.

(3) Subsection (1) does not apply to benefits of any description if the principal is concerned with the provision (whether or not for payment) of benefits of that description to the public, or to a section of the public which includes the contract worker in question, unless that provision differs in a material respect from the provision of the benefits by the principal to contract workers.

(4) This subsection applies to a disabled contract worker where, by virtue of—

(a) a provision, criterion or practice applied by or on behalf of all or most of the principals to whom he is or might be supplied, or
(b) a physical feature of premises occupied by such persons,
he is likely, on each occasion when he is supplied to a principal to do contract work, to be placed at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled which is the same or similar in each case.

(5) Where subsection (4) applies to a disabled contract worker, his employer must take such steps as he would have to take under section 4A if the provision, criterion or practice were applied by him or on his behalf or (as the case may be) if the premises were occupied by him.
(6) Section 4A applies to any principal, in relation to contract work, as if he were, or would be, the employer of the disabled contract worker and as if any contract worker supplied to do work for him were an employee of his.

(7) However, for the purposes of section 4A as applied by subsection (6), a principal is not required to take a step in relation to a disabled contract worker if under that section the disabled contract worker’s employer is required to take the step in relation to him.

(8) This section applies only in relation to contract work done at an establishment in Northern Ireland (the provisions of section 68 about the meaning of “employment at an establishment in Northern Ireland” applying for the purposes of this subsection with the appropriate modifications).

(9) In this section –

“principal” means a person (“A”) who makes work available for doing by individuals who are employed by another person who supplies them under a contract made with A;

“contract work” means work so made available; and

“contract worker” means any individual who is supplied to the principal under such a contract.

---

**Extent Information**

**E192** This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 4B exists for England, Wales and Scotland only until 1.10.2010.

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F782** Ss. 4-4K and cross-headings substituted for s. 4 (N.I.) (21.2.2004 for certain purposes and 1.10.2004 otherwise) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1(2)(3), 5(1)

---

**Office-holders: introductory**

**F34** Office-holders

**E+W+S**

---

**Extent Information**

**E7** This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only until 1.10.2010; a separate s. 4C exists for Northern Ireland only from 21.2.2004.

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F38** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
Office-holders: introductory N.I.

(1) Subject to subsection (5), sections 4D and 4E apply to an office or post if—

(a) no relevant provision of this Part applies in relation to an appointment to the office or post; and

(b) one or more of the conditions specified in subsection (3) is satisfied.

(2) The following are relevant provisions of this Part for the purposes of subsection (1)(a): section 4, section 4B, section 6A, section 7A, section 14C and section 15B(3)(b).

(3) The conditions specified in this subsection are that—

(a) the office or post is one to which persons are appointed to discharge functions personally under the direction of another person, and in respect of which they are entitled to remuneration;

(b) the office or post is one to which appointments are made by a Minister of the Crown, a Northern Ireland Minister or a government department;

(c) the office or post is one to which appointments are made on the recommendation of, or subject to the approval of, a body or person referred to in paragraph (b) or the Assembly.

(4) For the purposes of subsection (3)(a) the holder of an office or post—

(a) is to be regarded as discharging his functions under the direction of another person if that other person is entitled to direct him as to when and where he discharges those functions;

(b) is not to be regarded as entitled to remuneration merely because he is entitled to payments—

(i) in respect of expenses incurred by him in carrying out the functions of the office or post, or

(ii) by way of compensation for the loss of income or benefits he would or might have received from any person had he not been carrying out the functions of the office or post.

(5) Sections 4D and 4E do not apply to—

(a) any office of the House of Commons held by a member of it;

(b) a life peerage within the meaning of the Life Peerages Act 1958, or any office of the House of Lords held by a member of it;

(c) any office mentioned in Schedule 2 (Ministerial offices) to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975;

(d) any office of the Assembly held by a member of it;

(e) any office of a district council held by a member of it; or

(f) any office of a political party.]
Office-holders: discrimination and harassment

(1) It is unlawful for a relevant person, in relation to an appointment to an office or post to which this section applies, to discriminate against a disabled person –
   (a) in the arrangements which he makes for the purpose of determining who should be offered the appointment;
   (b) in the terms on which he offers him the appointment; or
   (c) by refusing to offer him the appointment.

(2) It is unlawful for a relevant person, in relation to an appointment to an office or post to which this section applies and which satisfies the condition set out in section 4C(3)(c), to discriminate against a disabled person –
   (a) in the arrangements which he makes for the purpose of determining who should be recommended or approved in relation to the appointment; or
   (b) in making or refusing to make a recommendation, or giving or refusing to give an approval, in relation to the appointment.

(3) It is unlawful for a relevant person, in relation to a disabled person who has been appointed to an office or post to which this section applies, to discriminate against him –
   (a) in the terms of the appointment;
   (b) in the opportunities which he affords him for promotion, a transfer, training or receiving any other benefit, or by refusing to afford him any such opportunity;
   (c) by terminating the appointment; or
   (d) by subjecting him to any other detriment in relation to the appointment.

(4) It is also unlawful for a relevant person, in relation to an office or post to which this section applies, to subject to harassment a disabled person –
   (a) who has been appointed to the office or post;
   (b) who is seeking or being considered for appointment to the office or post; or
(c) who is seeking or being considered for a recommendation or approval in relation to an appointment to an office or post satisfying the condition set out in section 4C(3)(c).

(5) Subsection (3) does not apply to benefits of any description if the relevant person is concerned with the provision (for payment or not) of benefits of that description to the public, or a section of the public to which the disabled person belongs, unless –

(a) that provision differs in a material respect from the provision of the benefits to persons appointed to offices or posts which are the same as, or not materially different from, that to which the disabled person has been appointed;

(b) the provision of the benefits to the person appointed is regulated by the terms and conditions of his appointment; or

(c) the benefits relate to training.

(6) In subsection (3)(c) the reference to the termination of the appointment includes a reference –

(a) to the termination of the appointment by the expiration of any period (including a period expiring by reference to an event or circumstance), not being a termination immediately after which the appointment is renewed on the same terms and conditions; and

(b) to the termination of the appointment by any act of the person appointed (including the giving of notice) in circumstances such that he is entitled to terminate the appointment by reason of the conduct of the relevant person.

(7) In this section –

(a) references to making a recommendation include references to making a negative recommendation; and

(b) references to refusal include references to deliberate omission.]
Office-holders: duty to make adjustments

(1) Where—

(a) a provision, criterion or practice applied by or on behalf of a relevant person, or

(b) any physical feature of premises—

(i) under the control of a relevant person, and

(ii) at or from which the functions of an office or post to which this section applies are performed,

places the disabled person concerned at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled, it is the duty of the relevant person to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to prevent the provision, criterion or practice, or feature, having that effect.

(2) In this section, “the disabled person concerned” means—

(a) in the case of a provision, criterion or practice for determining who should be appointed to, or recommended or approved in relation to, an office or post to which this section applies, any disabled person who—

(i) is, or has notified the relevant person that he may be, seeking appointment to, or (as the case may be) seeking a recommendation or approval in relation to, that office or post, or

(ii) is being considered for appointment to, or (as the case may be) for a recommendation or approval in relation to, that office or post;

(b) in any other case, a disabled person—

(i) who is seeking or being considered for appointment to, or a recommendation or approval in relation to, the office or post concerned, or

(ii) who has been appointed to the office or post concerned.

(3) Nothing in this section imposes any duty on the relevant person in relation to a disabled person if the relevant person does not know, and could not reasonably be expected to know—

(a) in the case of a person who is being considered for, or is or may be seeking, appointment to, or a recommendation or approval in relation to, an office or post, that the disabled person concerned—

(i) is, or may be, seeking appointment to, or (as the case may be) seeking a recommendation or approval in relation to, that office or post, or

(ii) is being considered for appointment to, or (as the case may be) for a recommendation or approval in relation to, that office or post; or

(b) in any case, that that person has a disability and is likely to be affected in the way mentioned in subsection (1).]
Textual Amendments

F783  Ss. 4-4K and cross-headings substituted for s. 4 and preceding cross-heading (N.I.) (21.2.2004 for certain purposes and 1.10.2004 otherwise) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1(2)(3), 5(1)

[F35  Office-holders: supplementary  E+W+S

F41  . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Extent Information

E10  This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only until 1.10.2010; a separate s. 4F exists for Northern Ireland only from 21.2.2004

Textual Amendments

F41  Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F783  Office-holders: supplementary  N.I.

(1) In sections 4C to 4E, appointment to an office or post does not include election to an office or post.

(2) In sections 4D and 4E, “relevant person” means –

(a) in a case relating to an appointment to an office or post, the person with power to make that appointment;

(b) in a case relating to the making of a recommendation or the giving of an approval in relation to an appointment, a person or body referred to in section 4C(3)(b) with power to make that recommendation or (as the case may be) to give that approval;

(c) in a case relating to a term of an appointment, the person with power to determine that term;

(d) in a case relating to a working condition afforded in relation to an appointment –

(i) the person with power to determine that working condition; or

(ii) where there is no such person, the person with power to make the appointment;

(e) in a case relating to the termination of an appointment, the person with power to terminate the appointment;

(f) in a case relating to the subjection of a disabled person to any other detriment or to harassment, any person or body falling within one or more of paragraphs (a) to (e) in relation to such cases as are there mentioned.

(3) In subsection (2)(d), “working condition” includes –

(a) any opportunity for promotion, a transfer, training or receiving any other benefit; and
Every occupational pension scheme shall be taken to include a provision (“the non-discrimination rule”) containing the following requirements –

(a) a requirement that the trustees or managers of the scheme refrain from discriminating against a relevant disabled person in carrying out any of their functions in relation to the scheme (including in particular their functions relating to the admission of members to the scheme and the treatment of members of the scheme);

(b) a requirement that the trustees or managers of the scheme do not subject a relevant disabled person to harassment in relation to the scheme.

(2) The other provisions of the scheme are to have effect subject to the non-discrimination rule.

(3) It is unlawful for the trustees or managers of an occupational pension scheme –
(a) to discriminate against a relevant disabled person contrary to requirement (a) of the non-discrimination rule; or
(b) to subject a relevant disabled person to harassment contrary to requirement (b) of the non-discrimination rule.

(4) The non-discrimination rule does not apply in relation to rights accrued, or benefits payable, in respect of periods of service prior to the coming into operation of this section (but it does apply to communications with members or prospective members of the scheme in relation to such rights or benefits).

(5) The trustees or managers of an occupational pension scheme may, if –
   (a) they do not (apart from this subsection) have power to make such alterations to the scheme as may be required to secure conformity with the non-discrimination rule, or
   (b) they have such power but the procedure for doing so –
      (i) is liable to be unduly complex or protracted, or
      (ii) involves the obtaining of consents which cannot be obtained, or can only be obtained with undue delay or difficulty,
    by resolution make such alterations to the scheme.

(6) The alterations referred to in subsection (5) may have effect in relation to a period before the alterations are made (but may not have effect in relation to a period before the coming into operation of this section).]

---

**Occupational pension schemes: duty to make adjustments**

(1) Where –
(a) a provision, criterion or practice (including a scheme rule) applied by or on behalf of the trustees or managers of an occupational pension scheme, or
(b) any physical feature of premises occupied by the trustees or managers, places a relevant disabled person at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled, it is the duty of the trustees or managers to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for them to have to take in order to prevent the provision, criterion or practice, or feature, having that effect.

(2) The making of alterations to scheme rules is (in addition to the examples set out in section 18B(2)) an example of a step which trustees or managers may have to take in order to comply with the duty set out in subsection (1).

(3) Nothing in subsection (1) imposes any duty on trustees or managers in relation to a disabled person if they do not know, and could not reasonably be expected to know –
(a) that the disabled person is a relevant disabled person; or
(b) that that person has a disability and is likely to be affected in the way mentioned in subsection (1).

---

**Extent Information**

**E198** This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 4H for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

---

**Textual Amendments**


F45 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

---

**Occupational pension schemes: procedure E+W+S**

(1) Where under section 17A a relevant disabled person presents a complaint to an industrial tribunal that the trustees or managers of an occupational pension scheme have acted in relation to him in a way which is unlawful under this Part, the employer in relation to that scheme shall, for the purposes of the rules governing procedure, be treated as a party and be entitled to appear and be heard in accordance with those rules.
(2) In this section, “employer”, in relation to an occupational pension scheme, has the meaning given by Article 121(1) of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 as at the date of coming into operation of this section.
(b) (where subsection (1)(b)(ii) applies) to membership of the scheme without discrimination.

(3) A declaration under subsection (2) –

(a) may be made in respect of such period as the declaration may specify (but may not be made in respect of any period before the coming into operation of this section);

(b) may make such provision as the tribunal considers appropriate as to the terms upon which, or the capacity in which, the disabled person is to enjoy such admission or membership.

(4) The tribunal may not award the disabled person any compensation under section 17A(2)(b) (whether in relation to arrears of benefits or otherwise) other than –

(a) compensation for injury to feelings;

(b) compensation pursuant to section 17A(5).

---

Occupational pension schemes: supplementary

(1) In their application to communications, sections 4G to 4J apply in relation to a disabled person who is –

(a) entitled to the present payment of dependants’ or survivors’ benefits under an occupational pension scheme; or

(b) a pension credit member of such a scheme,

as they apply in relation to a disabled person who is a pensioner member of the scheme.

(2) In sections 4G to 4J and in this section –
“active member”, “deferred member”, “managers”, “pension credit member”, “pensioner member” and “trustees or managers” have the meanings given by Article 121(1) of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 as at the date of coming into operation of this section;

“communications” includes –
(i) the provision of information, and
(ii) the operation of a dispute resolution procedure;

“member”, in relation to an occupational pension scheme, means any active, deferred or pensioner member;

“non-discrimination rule” means the rule in section 4G(1);  
“relevant disabled person”, in relation to an occupational pension scheme, means a disabled person who is a member or prospective member of the scheme; and

“prospective member” means any person who, under the terms of his contract of employment or the scheme rules or both –
(i) is able, at his own option, to become a member of the scheme,
(ii) will become so able if he continues in the same employment for a sufficiently long period,
(iii) will be admitted to it automatically unless he makes an election not to become a member, or
(iv) may be admitted to it subject to the consent of his employer.

Extent Information

E201 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 4K for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

Textual Amendments


Part II – THE EMPLOYMENT FIELD AND DISTRICT COUNCILS and members of locally-electable authorities

Textual Amendments

F50 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F49 6A Partnerships: discrimination and harassment N.I.

(1) It is unlawful for a firm, in relation to a position as partner in the firm, to discriminate against a disabled person –

(a) in the arrangements which they make for the purpose of determining who should be offered that position;

(b) in the terms on which they offer him that position;

(c) by refusing or deliberately omitting to offer him that position; or

(d) in a case where the person already holds that position –

(i) in the way they afford him access to any benefits or by refusing or deliberately omitting to afford him access to them; or

(ii) by expelling him from that position, or subjecting him to any other detriment.

(2) It is also unlawful for a firm, in relation to a position as partner in the firm, to subject to harassment a disabled person who holds or has applied for that position.

(3) Subsection (1) does not apply to benefits of any description if the firm are concerned with the provision (whether or not for payment) of benefits of that description to the public, or to a section of the public which includes the partner in question, unless that provision differs in a material respect from the provision of the benefits to other partners.

(4) The reference in subsection (1)(d)(ii) to the expulsion of a person from a position as partner includes a reference –

(a) to the termination of that person’s partnership by the expiration of any period (including a period expiring by reference to an event or circumstance), not being a termination immediately after which the partnership is renewed on the same terms; and

(b) to the termination of that person’s partnership by any act of his (including the giving of notice) in circumstances such that he is entitled to terminate it without notice by reason of the conduct of the other partners.]
Part II – THE EMPLOYMENT FIELD AND DISTRICT COUNCILs and members of locally-electable authorities

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

**Extent Information**

**E17** This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 6B exists for Northern Ireland only

**Textual Amendments**

**F51** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>[F48]</strong> 6B</th>
<th><strong>Partnerships: duty to make adjustments</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Where –</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a provision, criterion or practice applied by or on behalf of a firm, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) any physical feature of premises occupied by the firm,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>places the disabled person concerned at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled, it is the duty of the firm to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for them to have to take in order to prevent the provision, criterion or practice, or feature, having that effect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) In this section, “the disabled person concerned” means –</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) in the case of a provision, criterion or practice for determining to whom the position of partner should be offered, any disabled person who is, or has notified the firm that he may be, a candidate for that position;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) in any other case, a disabled person who is –</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) a partner, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) a candidate for the position of partner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Nothing in this section imposes any duty on a firm in relation to a disabled person if the firm do not know, and could not reasonably be expected to know –</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) in the case of a candidate or potential candidate, that the disabled person concerned is, or may be, a candidate for the position of partner; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) in any case, that that person has a disability and is likely to be affected in the way mentioned in subsection (1).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Where a firm are required by this section to take any steps in relation to the disabled person concerned, the cost of taking those steps shall be treated as an expense of the firm; and the extent to which such cost should be borne by that person, where he is or becomes a partner in the firm, shall not exceed such amount as is reasonable, having regard in particular to the proportion in which he is entitled to share in the firm’s profits.]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Extent Information**

**E203** This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 6B for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).
Part II – THE EMPLOYMENT FIELD AND DISTRICT COUNCILS

and members of locally-electable authorities

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Partnerships: supplementary

Extent Information

This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 6C exists for Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments

Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Partnerships: supplementary

This section extended to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 6C for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

Textual Amendments

Ss. 7A-7D and cross-heading inserted (E.W. for ss. 7A, 7B, S. for ss. 7C, 7D) (3.7.2003 for certain purposes and 1.10.2004 otherwise) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1673), regs. 1(2)(3), 8 - see also s. 70(5A)(5B) of this Act.

[F537A Barristers: discrimination and harassment E+W]

Extent Information
E19 This section extended to England and Wales only; a separate s. 7A exists for Northern Ireland from 21.2.2004.

Textual Amendments
F55 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F547A Barristers: discrimination and harassment N.I.]

(1) It is unlawful for a barrister, in relation to taking any person as his pupil, to discriminate against a disabled person –
   (a) in the arrangements which he makes for the purpose of determining whom he will take as his pupil;
   (b) in respect of any terms on which he offers to take the disabled person as his pupil; or
   (c) by refusing, or deliberately omitting, to take the disabled person as his pupil.

(2) It is unlawful for a barrister, in relation to a disabled person who is a pupil, to discriminate against him –
   (a) in respect of any terms applicable to him as a pupil;
   (b) in the opportunities for training, or gaining experience, which are afforded or denied to him;
   (c) in the benefits which are afforded or denied to him;
   (d) by terminating the relationship or by subjecting him to any pressure to leave; or
   (e) by subjecting him to any other detriment.

(3) It is unlawful for a barrister, in relation to taking any person as his pupil, to subject to harassment a disabled person who is, or has applied to be taken as, his pupil.

(4) It is also unlawful for any person, in relation to the giving, withholding or acceptance of instructions to a barrister, to discriminate against a disabled person or to subject him to harassment.

(5) In this section and section 7B “pupil” has the meaning commonly associated with its use in the context of a person training as a barrister.

Extent Information
E205 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 7A for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).
[F537B Barristers: duty to make adjustments E+W+S]

Extent Information
E20 This section extended to England and Wales only; a separate s. 7B exists for Northern Ireland only from 21.2.2004.

Textual Amendments
F56 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F547B Barristers: duty to make adjustments N.I.]

(1) Where –
(a) a provision, criterion or practice applied by or on behalf of a barrister, or
(b) any physical feature of premises occupied by, and under the control of, a barrister,
places the disabled person concerned at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled, it is the duty of the barrister to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to prevent the provision, criterion or practice, or feature, having that effect.

(2) In this section, “the disabled person concerned” means –
(a) in the case of a provision, criterion or practice for determining whom he will take as his pupil, any disabled person who has applied, or has notified the barrister that he may apply, to be taken as a pupil;
(b) in any other case, a disabled person who is –
(i) an applicant to be taken as the barrister’s pupil, or
(ii) a pupil.

(3) Nothing in this section imposes any duty on a barrister in relation to a disabled person if he does not know, and could not reasonably be expected to know –
(a) in the case of an applicant or potential applicant, that the disabled person concerned is, or may be, applying to be taken as his pupil; or
(b) in any case, that that person has a disability and is likely to be affected in the way mentioned in subsection (1).]

Extent Information
E206 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 7B for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

[F537C Advocates: discrimination and harassment F87]
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

Part II – THE EMPLOYMENT FIELD AND DISTRICT COUNCILs and members of locally-electable authorities

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

---

Textual Amendments

F57 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

---

F537D Advocates: duty to make adjustments

F58 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

---

Enforcement etc.

---

Extent Information

E207 This version of this provision extends to Northern Ireland only; in its application to Northern Ireland, this section has effect subject to the modifications set out in Sch. 8; see s. 70(6).

Textual Amendments


Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C56 S. 8: transfer of certain functions (N.I.) (1.12.1999) by S.R. 1999/481, art. 4(b), Sch. 2 Pt. II

Commencement Information


---

Textual Amendments

Discrimination by other persons

12 Discrimination against contract workers.

Textual Amendments


15 Appeal against refusal of exemption certificate.

Textual Amendments

Trade and professional bodies

---

Trade organisations: discrimination and harassment

(1) It is unlawful for a trade organisation to discriminate against a disabled person –
   (a) in the arrangements which it makes for the purpose of determining who should be offered membership of the organisation;
   (b) in the terms on which it is prepared to admit him to membership of the organisation; or
   (c) by refusing to accept, or deliberately not accepting, his application for membership.

(2) It is unlawful for a trade organisation, in the case of a disabled person who is a member of the organisation, to discriminate against him –
   (a) in the way it affords him access to any benefits or by refusing or deliberately omitting to afford him access to them;
   (b) by depriving him of membership, or varying the terms on which he is a member; or
   (c) by subjecting him to any other detriment.

(3) It is also unlawful for a trade organisation, in relation to membership of that organisation, to subject to harassment a disabled person who –
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part II – THE EMPLOYMENT FIELD AND DISTRICT COUNCILS
and members of locally-electable authorities

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

(a) is a member of the organisation; or
(b) has applied for membership of the organisation.

(4) In this section and section 14 “trade organisation” means –
(a) an organisation of workers;
(b) an organisation of employers; or
(c) any other organisation whose members carry on a particular profession or trade for the purposes of which the organisation exists.

(1) Where –
(a) a provision, criterion or practice applied by or on behalf of a trade organisation, or
(b) any physical feature of premises occupied by the organisation, places the disabled person concerned at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled, it is the duty of the organisation to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for it to have to take in order to prevent the provision, criterion or practice, or feature, having that effect.

(2) In this section “the disabled person concerned” means –
(a) in the case of a provision, criterion or practice for determining to whom membership should be offered, any disabled person who is, or has notified the organisation that he may be, an applicant for membership;

(b) in any other case, a disabled person who is –
   (i) a member of the organisation; or
   (ii) an applicant for membership of the organisation.

(3) Nothing in this section imposes any duty on an organisation in relation to a disabled person if the organisation does not know, and could not reasonably be expected to know –
   (a) in the case of an applicant or potential applicant, that the disabled person concerned is, or may be, an applicant for membership of the organisation; or
   (b) in any case, that that person has a disability and is likely to be affected in the way mentioned in subsection (1).]

Extent Information

E209 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 14 for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

Editorial Information

X4 S. 14: to view versions of this N.I. section before 21.2.2004 it is recommended that users search from cross-heading "Discrimination by other persons"

[F7114A Qualifications bodies: discrimination and harassment E+W+S

F74 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Extent Information

E24 This section extends to England and Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 14A exists for Northern Ireland only from 21.2.2004.

Textual Amendments

F74 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F7014A Qualifications bodies: discrimination and harassment N.I.

(1) It is unlawful for a qualifications body to discriminate against a disabled person –
   (a) in the arrangements which it makes for the purpose of determining upon whom to confer a professional or trade qualification;
   (b) in the terms on which it is prepared to confer a professional or trade qualification on him;
   (c) by refusing or deliberately omitting to grant any application by him for such a qualification; or
by withdrawing such a qualification from him or varying the terms on which he holds it.

(2) It is also unlawful for a qualifications body, in relation to a professional or trade qualification conferred by it, to subject to harassment a disabled person who holds or applies for such a qualification.

(3) In determining for the purposes of subsection (1) whether the application by a qualifications body of a competence standard to a disabled person constitutes discrimination within the meaning of section 3A, the application of the standard is justified for the purposes of section 3A(1)(b) if, but only if, the qualifications body can show that –

(a) the standard is, or would be, applied equally to persons who do not have his particular disability; and

(b) its application is a proportionate means of achieving a legitimate aim.

(4) For the purposes of subsection (3) –

(a) section 3A(2) (and (6)) does not apply; and

(b) section 3A(4) has effect as if the reference to section 3A(3) were a reference to subsection (3) of this section.

(5) In this section and section 14B –

“qualifications body” means any authority or body which can confer a professional or trade qualification, but it does not include –

(a) a board;
(b) the Board of Governors of a grant-aided school;
(c) the proprietor of an independent school;
(d) the Council for Catholic Maintained Schools;
(e) the governing body of a university;
(f) the governing body of an institution of further education;
(g) the managers of a college of education;
(h) the governing body of the College of Agriculture, Food and Rural Enterprise;

“confer” includes renew or extend;

“professional or trade qualification” means an authorisation, qualification, recognition, registration, enrolment, approval or certification which is needed for, or facilitates engagement in, a particular profession or trade;

“competence standard” means an academic, medical or other standard applied by or on behalf of a qualifications body for the purpose of determining whether or not a person has a particular level of competence or ability.

(6) Words and expressions used in the definition of “qualifications body” in subsection (5) to which a meaning is assigned by Article 2(2) of the Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 [F796] have the same meaning as in that Order.

---

**Extent Information**

**E210** This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 14A for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).
Textual Amendments


[F71

14B Qualifications bodies: duty to make adjustments E+W+S

F75 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Extent Information

E25 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 14B exists for Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments

F75 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F78

14B Qualifications bodies: duty to make adjustments N.I.

(1) Where –

(a) a provision, criterion or practice, other than a competence standard, applied by or on behalf of a qualifications body; or

(b) any physical feature of premises occupied by a qualifications body, places the disabled person concerned at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled, it is the duty of the qualifications body to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for it to have to take in order to prevent the provision, criterion or practice, or feature, having that effect.

(2) In this section “the disabled person concerned” means –

(a) in the case of a provision, criterion or practice for determining on whom a professional or trade qualification is to be conferred, any disabled person who is, or has notified the qualifications body that he may be, an applicant for the conferment of that qualification;

(b) in any other case, a disabled person who –

(i) holds a professional or trade qualification conferred by the qualifications body, or

(ii) applies for a professional or trade qualification which it confers.

(3) Nothing in this section imposes a duty on a qualifications body in relation to a disabled person if the body does not know, and could not reasonably be expected to know –

(a) in the case of an applicant or potential applicant, that the disabled person concerned is, or may be, an applicant for the conferment of a professional or trade qualification; or

(b) in any case, that that person has a disability and is likely to be affected in the way mentioned in subsection (1).]
[F71 14C Practical work experience: discrimination and harassment][E+W+S]

(1) It is unlawful, in the case of a disabled person seeking or undertaking a work placement, for a placement provider to discriminate against him—

(a) in the arrangements which he makes for the purpose of determining who should be offered a work placement;

(b) in the terms on which he affords him access to any work placement or any facilities concerned with such a placement;

(c) by refusing or deliberately omitting to afford him such access;

(d) by terminating the placement; or

(e) by subjecting him to any other detriment in relation to the placement.

(2) It is also unlawful for a placement provider, in relation to a work placement, to subject to harassment—

(a) a disabled person to whom he is providing a placement; or

(b) a disabled person who has applied to him for a placement.

[36]Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part II – THE EMPLOYMENT FIELD AND DISTRICT COUNCILS

members of locally-electable authorities

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for
the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)
“placement provider” means any person who provides a work placement to a person whom he does not employ.

(5) This section and section 14D do not apply to a work placement undertaken in any of the naval, military and air forces of the Crown.]

**Practical work experience: duty to make adjustments**

(1) Where –

(a) a provision, criterion or practice applied by or on behalf of a placement provider, or

(b) any physical feature of premises occupied by the placement provider, places the disabled person concerned at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled, it is the duty of the placement provider to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to prevent the provision, criterion or practice, or feature, having that effect.

(2) In this section, “the disabled person concerned” means –

(a) in the case of a provision, criterion or practice for determining to whom a work placement should be offered, any disabled person who is, or has notified the placement provider that he may be, an applicant for that work placement;

(b) in any other case, a disabled person who is –

(i) an applicant for the work placement concerned, or

(ii) undertaking a work placement with the placement provider.
(3) Nothing in this section imposes any duty on a placement provider in relation to the disabled person concerned if he does not know, and could not reasonably be expected to know —
(a) in the case of an applicant or potential applicant, that the disabled person concerned is, or may be, an applicant for the work placement; or
(b) in any case, that that person has a disability and is likely to be affected in the way mentioned in subsection (1).]

Extent Information
E213 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 14D for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

[F78Relationships between locally-electable authorities and their members][F79Relationships between district councils and their members]
(b) as member of any body to which he is appointed by, or is appointed following nomination by, the council or a group of bodies that includes the council; or
(c) as member of any other body if it is a public body.]

**Extent Information**

**E214** This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 15A for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

---

**15B Authorities and their members: discrimination and harassment**  
**E+W+S**

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F81** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by **Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)**, 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by **S.I. 2010/2279**, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, **art. 16**); S.I. 2010/2317, **art. 2(15)(f)** (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, **art. 2(h)**

---

**15B Councils and their members: discrimination and harassment**  
**N.I.**

(1) It is unlawful for a council to discriminate against a disabled person who is a member of the council—
(a) in the opportunities which it affords the disabled person to receive training, or any other facility, for his carrying-out of official business;
(b) by refusing to afford, or deliberately not affording, the disabled person any such opportunities; or
(c) by subjecting the disabled person to any other detriment in connection with his carrying-out of official business.

(2) It is unlawful for a council to subject a disabled person who is a member of the council to harassment in connection with his carrying-out of official business.

(3) A member of a council is not subjected to a detriment for the purposes of subsection (1) by reason of—
(a) his not being appointed or elected to an office of the council;
(b) his not being appointed or elected to, or to an office of, a committee or sub-committee of the council; or
(c) his not being appointed or nominated in exercise of any power of the council, or of a group of bodies that includes the council, to appoint, or nominate for appointment, to any body.

(4) Regulations may make provision as to the circumstances in which treatment is to be taken to be justified, or is to be taken not to be justified, for the purposes
of section 3A(1)(b) as it has effect for the interpretation of “discriminate” in subsection (1).

(5) Regulations under subsection (4) may (in particular) provide for section 3A(3) to apply with prescribed modifications, or not to apply, for those purposes; but treatment of a disabled person cannot be justified under subsection (4) if it amounts to direct discrimination falling within section 3A(5).

(6) If, in a case falling within section 3A(1) as it has effect for the interpretation of “discriminate” in subsection (1), a council is under a duty imposed by section 15C in relation to a disabled person but fails to comply with that duty, its treatment of that person cannot be justified under subsection (4) unless it would have been justified even if it had complied with that duty.

Authorities and their members: duty to make adjustments

(1) Subsection (2) applies where—
(a) a provision, criterion or practice applied by or on behalf of a council, or
(b) any physical feature of premises occupied by, or under the control of, a council,
places a disabled person who is a member of the council at a substantial disadvantage, in comparison with members of the council who are not disabled persons, in connection with his carrying-out of official business.

(2) It is the duty of the council to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for it to have to take in order to prevent the provision, criterion or practice, or feature, having that effect.

(3) Subsection (2) does not impose any duty on a council in relation to a member of the council who is a disabled person if the council does not know, and could not reasonably be expected to know, that the member—
(a) has a disability; and
(b) is likely to be affected in the way mentioned in subsection (1).

(4) Regulations may make provision, for purposes of this section—
(a) as to circumstances in which a provision, criterion or practice, or physical feature, is to be taken to have the effect mentioned in subsection (1);
(b) as to circumstances in which a provision, criterion or practice, or physical feature, is to be taken not to have the effect mentioned in subsection (1);
(c) as to circumstances in which it is, or as to circumstances in which it is not, reasonable for a council to have to take steps of a prescribed description;
(d) as to steps which it is always, or as to steps which it is never, reasonable for a council to have to take;
(e) as to things which are, or as to things which are not, to be treated as physical features.

---

**Extent Information**

E216 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 15C for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

---

**Textual Amendments**


---

**16 Alterations to premises occupied under leases.**

F84

---

**Textual Amendments**


---

**Other unlawful acts**

---

**Textual Amendments**


---

**[F86]16A Relationships which have come to an end**

E+W+S

---

**Extent Information**

E31 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 16A exists for Northern Ireland only.

---

**Textual Amendments**

F87 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

---

**[F85]16A Relationships which have come to an end**

N.I.

(1) This section applies where –

(a) there has been a relevant relationship between a disabled person and another person (“the relevant person”), and
(b) the relationship has come to an end.

(2) In this section a “relevant relationship” is –

(a) a relationship during the course of which an act of discrimination against, or harassment of, one party to the relationship by the other party to it is unlawful under any preceding provision of this Part[FP92, other than sections 15B and 15C]; or

(b) a relationship between a person providing employment services[FP93]... and a person receiving such services.

(3) It is unlawful for the relevant person –

(a) to discriminate against the disabled person by subjecting him to a detriment, or
(b) to subject the disabled person to harassment,
where the discrimination or harassment arises out of and is closely connected to the relevant relationship.

(4) This subsection applies where –

(a) a provision, criterion or practice applied by the relevant person to the disabled person in relation to any matter arising out of the relevant relationship, or

(b) a physical feature of premises which are occupied by the relevant person, places the disabled person at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled, but are in the same position as the disabled person in relation to the relevant person.

(5) Where subsection (4) applies, it is the duty of the relevant person to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to prevent the provision, practice or criterion, or feature, having that effect.
(6) Nothing in subsection (5) imposes any duty on the relevant person if he does not know, and could not reasonably be expected to know, that the disabled person has a disability and is likely to be affected in the way mentioned in that subsection.

(7) In subsection (2), reference to an act of discrimination or harassment which is unlawful includes, in the case of a relationship which has come to an end before the commencement of this section, reference to such an act which would, after the commencement of this section, be unlawful.

**Discriminatory advertisements**

It is unlawful for a person to publish or cause to be published an advertisement which—

(a) invites applications for a relevant appointment or benefit; and

(b) indicates, or might reasonably be understood to indicate, that an application will or may be determined to any extent by reference to—

(i) the applicant not having any disability, or any particular disability,

(ii) the applicant not having had any disability, or any particular disability, or

(iii) any reluctance of the person determining the application to comply with a duty to make reasonable adjustments or (in relation to employment services) with the duty imposed by section 21(1) as modified by section 21A(6).
(2) Subsection (1) does not apply where it would not in fact be unlawful under this Part or, to the extent that it relates to the provision of employment services, Part III for an application to be determined in the manner indicated (or understood to be indicated) in the advertisement.

A person who publishes an advertisement of the kind described in subsection (1) shall not be subject to any liability under subsection (1) in respect of the publication of the advertisement if he proves—
(a) that the advertisement was published in reliance on a statement made to him by the person who caused it to be published to the effect that, by reason of the operation of subsection (2), the publication would not be unlawful; and
(b) that it was reasonable for him to rely on the statement.

(2B) A person who knowingly or recklessly makes a statement such as is mentioned in subsection (2A)(a) which in a material respect is false or misleading commits an offence, and shall be liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to an advertisement so far as it invites persons to apply in their capacity as members of a district council, for a relevant appointment or benefit which the council is intending to make or confer.

In this section, “relevant appointment or benefit” means—
(a) any employment, promotion or transfer of employment;
(b) membership of, or a benefit under, an occupational pension scheme;
(c) an appointment to any office or post to which section 4D applies;
(d) any partnership in a firm (within the meaning of section 6A);
(e) any pupillage (within the meaning of section 7A);
(f) any membership of a trade organisation (within the meaning of section 13);
(g) any professional or trade qualification (within the meaning of section 14A);
(h) any work placement (within the meaning of section 14C);
(i) any employment services . . . .

(4) In this section, “advertisement” includes every form of advertisement or notice, whether to the public or not.
Instructions and pressure to discriminate

(1) It is unlawful for a person –
   (a) who has authority over another person, or
   (b) in accordance with whose wishes that other person is accustomed to act,
   to instruct him to do any act which is unlawful under this Part or, to the extent that it
   relates to the provision of employment services, Part III, or to procure or attempt to
   procure the doing by him of any such act.

(2) It is also unlawful to induce, or attempt to induce, a person to do any act which
    contravenes this Part or, to the extent that it relates to the provision of employment
    services, Part III by –
    (a) providing or offering to provide him with any benefit, or
    (b) subjecting or threatening to subject him to any detriment.

(3) An attempted inducement is not prevented from falling within subsection (2) because
    it is not made directly to the person in question, if it is made in such a way that he
    is likely to hear of it.]
otherwise) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1(2)(3), {5(2)}

17 Occupational pension schemes.

Textual Amendments


[F92 Enforcement etc.]
(c) recommending that the respondent take, within a specified period, action appearing to the tribunal to be reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for the purpose of obviating or reducing the adverse effect on the complainant of any matter to which the complaint relates.

(3) Where a tribunal orders compensation under subsection (2)(b), the amount of the compensation shall be calculated by applying the principles applicable to the calculation of damages in claims in tort for breach of statutory duty.

(4) For the avoidance of doubt it is hereby declared that compensation in respect of discrimination in a way which is unlawful under this Part may include compensation for injury to feelings whether or not it includes compensation under any other head.

(5) If the respondent to a complaint fails, without reasonable justification, to comply with a recommendation made by an industrial tribunal under subsection (2)(c) the tribunal may, if it thinks it just and equitable to do so—

(a) increase the amount of compensation required to be paid to the complainant in respect of the complaint, where an order was made under subsection (2)(b); or

(b) make an order under subsection (2)(b).

(6) Regulations may make provision—

(a) for enabling a tribunal, where an amount of compensation falls to be awarded under subsection (2)(b), to include in the award interest on that amount; and

(b) specifying, for cases where a tribunal decides that an award is to include an amount in respect of interest, the manner in which and the periods and rate by reference to which the interest is to be determined.

(7) Regulations may modify the operation of any order made under Article 16 of the Industrial Tribunals (Northern Ireland) Order 1996 \(^\text{100}\) (power to make provision as to interest on sums payable in pursuance of industrial tribunal decisions) to the extent that it relates to an award of compensation under subsection (2)(b).

(8) Part I of Schedule 3 makes further provision about the enforcement of this Part and about procedure.
Enforcement of sections 16B(1) and 16C

(1) Only the Commission may bring proceedings in respect of a contravention of section 16B(1) (discriminatory advertisements) or section 16C (instructions and pressure to discriminate).

(2) The Commission shall bring any such proceedings in accordance with subsection (3) or (4).

(3) The Commission may present to an industrial tribunal a complaint that a person has done an act which is unlawful under section 16B(1) or 16C; and if the tribunal finds that the complaint is well-founded it shall make a declaration to that effect.

(4) Where –
   (a) a tribunal has made a finding pursuant to subsection (3) that a person has done an act which is unlawful under section 16B(1) or 16C,
   (b) that finding has become final, and
(c) it appears to the Commission that, unless restrained, he is likely to do a further act which is unlawful under section 16B(1) or (as the case may be) section 16C,

the Commission may apply to a county court for an injunction restraining him from doing such an act; and the court, if satisfied that the application is well-founded, may grant the injunction in the terms applied for or in more limited terms.

(5) A finding of a tribunal under subsection (3) in respect of any act shall, if it has become final, be treated as conclusive by a county court upon an application under subsection (4).

(6) A finding of a tribunal becomes final for the purposes of this section when an appeal against it is dismissed, withdrawn or abandoned or when the time for appealing expires without an appeal having been brought.

(7) An industrial tribunal shall not consider a complaint under subsection (3) unless it is presented before the end of the period of six months beginning when the act to which it relates was done; and a county court shall not consider an application under subsection (4) unless it is made before the end of the period of five years so beginning.

(8) A court or tribunal may consider any such complaint or application which is out of time if, in all the circumstances of the case, it considers that it is just and equitable to do so.

(9) The provisions of paragraph 3(3) and (4) of Schedule 3 apply for the purposes of subsection (7) as they apply for the purposes of paragraph 3(1) of that Schedule.

(10) In this section “the Commission” means the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland.

---

**Extent Information**

**E220** This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 17B for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

**Textual Amendments**


**F800** Word in s. 17B(1)(3)(4)(a) and heading substituted (N.I) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), {Sch. 1 para. 9(2)}; S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(l)

**F801** Words in s. 17B(4)(c) substituted (N.I) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 9(3); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2) (l)
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

Part II – THE EMPLOYMENT FIELD AND DISTRICT COUNCILS and members of locally-electable authorities

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective. Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Extent Information
E35 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 17C exists for Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments
F104 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A–49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F799]17C Validity of contracts, collective agreements and rules of undertakings N.I.
Schedule 3A shall have effect.

Extent Information
E221 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 17C for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

Textual Amendments

[F105]Supplementary and general

Textual Amendments

18 Insurance services.

F106

Textual Amendments
Alterations to premises occupied under leases.

F107 18A

F108 (1) This section applies where—

(a) a person to whom a duty to make reasonable adjustments applies (“the occupier”) occupies premises under a lease;

(b) but for this section, the occupier would not be entitled to make a particular alteration to the premises; and

(c) the alteration is one which the occupier proposes to make in order to comply with that duty.

(2) Except to the extent to which it expressly so provides, the lease shall have effect by virtue of this subsection as if it provided—

(a) for the occupier to be entitled to make the alteration with the written consent of the lessor;

(b) for the occupier to have to make a written application to the lessor for consent if he wishes to make the alteration;

(c) if such an application is made, for the lessor not to withhold his consent unreasonably; and

(d) for the lessor to be entitled to make his consent subject to reasonable conditions.

F109 (2A) Except to the extent to which it expressly so provides, any superior lease under which the premises are held shall have effect in relation to the lessor and lessee who are parties to that lease as if it provided—

(i) for the lessee to have to make a written application to the lessor for consent to the alteration;

(ii) if such an application is made, for the lessor not to withhold his consent unreasonably; and

(iii) for the lessor to be entitled to make his consent subject to reasonable conditions.

(3) In this section—

“lease” includes a tenancy, sub-lease or sub-tenancy and an agreement for a lease, tenancy, sub-lease or sub-tenancy; and

“sub-lease” and “sub-tenancy” have such meaning as may be prescribed.

(4) If the terms and conditions of a lease—

(a) impose conditions which are to apply if the occupier alters the premises, or

(b) entitle the lessor to impose conditions when consenting to the occupier’s altering the premises,

the occupier is to be treated for the purposes of subsection (1) as not being entitled to make the alteration.

(5) Part I of Schedule 4 supplements the provisions of this section.

Textual Amendments

F108  Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)


F111  S. 16(2A) added (7.6.1996) by S.I. 1996/1333, reg. 4(2)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C8  S. 18A modified (N.I.) (1.10.2004) by The Disability Discrimination (Employment Field) (Leasehold Premises) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/374, reg. 4-9

Commencement Information


Reasonable adjustments: supplementary

(1) In determining whether it is reasonable for a person to have to take a particular step in order to comply with a duty to make reasonable adjustments, regard shall be had, in particular, to—
   (a) the extent to which taking the step would prevent the effect in relation to which the duty is imposed;
   (b) the extent to which it is practicable for him to take the step;
   (c) the financial and other costs which would be incurred by him in taking the step and the extent to which taking it would disrupt any of his activities;
   (d) the extent of his financial and other resources;
   (e) the availability to him of financial or other assistance with respect to taking the step;
   (f) the nature of his activities and the size of his undertaking;
   (g) where the step would be taken in relation to a private household, the extent to which taking it would—
      (i) disrupt that household, or
      (ii) disturb any person residing there.
(2) The following are examples of steps which a person may need to take in relation to a disabled person in order to comply with a duty to make reasonable adjustments—
   (a) making adjustments to premises;
   (b) allocating some of the disabled person’s duties to another person;
   (c) transferring him to fill an existing vacancy;
   (d) altering his hours of working or training;
   (e) assigning him to a different place of work or training;
   (f) allowing him to be absent during working or training hours for rehabilitation, assessment or treatment;
   (g) giving, or arranging for, training or mentoring (whether for the disabled person or any other person);
   (h) acquiring or modifying equipment;
   (i) modifying instructions or reference manuals;
   (j) modifying procedures for testing or assessment;
   (k) providing a reader or interpreter;
   (l) providing supervision or other support.

(3) For the purposes of a duty to make reasonable adjustments, where under any binding obligation a person is required to obtain the consent of another person to any alteration of the premises occupied by him—
   (a) it is always reasonable for him to have to take steps to obtain that consent; and
   (b) it is never reasonable for him to have to make that alteration before that consent is obtained.

(4) The steps referred to in subsection (3)(a) shall not be taken to include an application to a court or tribunal.

(5) In subsection (3), “binding obligation” means a legally binding obligation (not contained in a lease (within the meaning of section 18A(3)) in relation to the premises, whether arising from an agreement or otherwise.

(6) A provision of this Part imposing a duty to make reasonable adjustments applies only for the purpose of determining whether a person has discriminated against a disabled person; and accordingly a breach of any such duty is not actionable as such.[]

Extent Information

E36 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only.

Textual Amendments


F113 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
Charities and support for particular groups of persons. E+W+S

18C ..........................  

Extent Information

E37 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 18C exists for Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments


F115 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Charities and support for particular groups of persons N.I.

(1) Nothing in this Part –

(a) affects any charitable instrument which provides for conferring benefits on one or more categories of person determined by reference to any physical or mental capacity; or

(b) makes unlawful any act done by a charity in pursuance of any of its charitable purposes, so far as those purposes are connected with persons so determined.

(2) Nothing in this Part prevents –

(a) a person who provides supported employment from treating members of a particular group of disabled persons more favourably than other persons in providing such employment; or

(b) the [F803Department for Communities] from agreeing to arrangements for the provision of supported employment which will, or may, have that effect.

(3) In this section –

“charitable instrument” means an enactment or other instrument (whenever taking effect) so far as it relates to charitable purposes;

“charitable purposes” means purposes which are exclusively charitable according to the law of Northern Ireland;

“charity” has the same meaning as in Charities Act (Northern Ireland) 1964;

and

“supported employment” means facilities provided, or in respect of which payments are made, under section 15 of the Disabled Persons (Employment) Act (Northern Ireland) 1945.

Extent Information

E222 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 18C for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).
Interpretation of Part II

(1) Subject to any duty to make reasonable adjustments, nothing in this Part is to be taken to require a person to treat a disabled person more favourably than he treats or would treat others.

(2) In this Part –

“benefits”, except in sections 4G to 4K, includes facilities and services;
“detriment”, except in section 16C(2)(b), does not include conduct of the nature referred to in section 3B (harassment);
“discriminate”, “discrimination” and other related expressions are to be construed in accordance with section 3A;
“duty to make reasonable adjustments” means a duty imposed by or under section 4A, 4B(5) or (6), 4E, 4H, 6B, 7B, 14, 14B, 14D [F807, 15C] or 16A(5);
“employer” includes a person who has no employees but is seeking to employ another person;
“harassment” is to be construed in accordance with section 3B;
“physical feature”, in relation to any premises, includes [F808(subject to any provision under section 15C(4)(e))] any of the following (whether permanent or temporary) –

(a) any feature arising from the design or construction of a building on the premises,
(b) any feature on the premises of any approach to, exit from or access to such a building,
(c) any fixtures, fittings, furnishings, furniture, equipment or material in or on the premises,
(d) any other physical element or quality of any land comprised in the premises;
“provision, criterion or practice” includes any arrangements.]]
PART III

DISCRIMINATION IN OTHER AREAS

19 Discrimination in relation to goods, facilities and services.

(1) It is unlawful for a provider of services to discriminate against a disabled person—

(a) in refusing to provide, or deliberately not providing, to the disabled person any service which he provides, or is prepared to provide, to members of the public;

(b) in failing to comply with any duty imposed on him by section 21 in circumstances in which the effect of that failure is to make it impossible or unreasonably difficult for the disabled person to make use of any such service;

(c) in the standard of service which he provides to the disabled person or the manner in which he provides it to him; or

(d) in the terms on which he provides a service to the disabled person.

(2) For the purposes of this section and sections 20 to 21ZA—

(a) the provision of services includes the provision of any goods or facilities;

(b) a person is “a provider of services” if he is concerned with the provision, in the United Kingdom, of services to the public or to a section of the public; and

(c) it is irrelevant whether a service is provided on payment or without payment.

(3) The following are examples of services to which this section and sections 20 and 21 apply—

(a) access to and use of any place which members of the public are permitted to enter;

(b) access to and use of means of communication;

(c) access to and use of information services;

(d) accommodation in a hotel, boarding house or other similar establishment;

(e) facilities by way of banking or insurance or for grants, loans, credit or finance;

(f) facilities for entertainment, recreation or refreshment;

(g) facilities provided by employment agencies or under sections 1 and 2 of the Employment and Training Act (Northern Ireland) 1950;

(h) the services of any profession or trade, or any local or other public authority.

(4) In the case of an act which constitutes discrimination by virtue of section 55, this section also applies to discrimination against a person who is not disabled.

(4A) Subsection (1) does not apply to anything that is governed by Regulation (EC) No. 1107/2006 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 5 July 2006 concerning the rights of disabled persons and persons with reduced mobility when travelling by air.

(5) Regulations may provide for subsection (1) and section 21(1), (2) and (4) not to apply, or to apply only to a prescribed extent, in relation to a service of a prescribed description.
Nothing in this section or sections 20 to 21A applies to the provision of a service in relation to which discrimination is unlawful under Part III of the 2005 Order.

Extent Information

E39 E Note: Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only. Prior to that repeal, different versions of this section had been created for N.I. and E.W.S. respectively to reflect the different amendment history for each jurisdiction. This version is based on the N.I. version as it stood at the date of the repeal. It does not reflect the history of E.W.S. effects prior to the 2010 repeal which can be found in earlier versions.

Textual Amendments

F120 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F121 Words in s. 19(2) substituted (N.I.) (3.7.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 12(2); S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(b)

F122 Words in s. 19(3)(g) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 9(1) of this Act

F123 S. 19(4A) inserted (26.7.2007) by The Civil Aviation (Access to Air Travel for Disabled Persons and Persons with Reduced Mobility) Regulations (S.I. 2007/1895), regs. 1(2), 8

F124 S. 19(5) substituted (N.I.) (3.7.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 12(3); S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(b)

F125 S. 19(6) substituted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 12(4); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(m) (Note: by Education Act (Northern Ireland) 2014 (c. 12), Sch. 3 para. 13; S.R. 2015/35, art. 2(b) it is expressed that in section 19(6) "for paragraph (a) there should be substituted (1.4.2015) "(a) the Education Authority"")

Commencement Information


20 Meaning of “discrimination”

F126(1) For the purposes of section 19, a provider of services discriminates against a disabled person if —

(a) for a reason which relates to the disabled person's disability, he treats him less favourably than he treats or would treat others to whom that reason does not or would not apply; and

(b) he cannot show that the treatment in question is justified.

(2) For the purposes of section 19, a provider of services also discriminates against a disabled person if —

(a) he fails to comply with a section 21 duty imposed on him in relation to the disabled person; and
(b) he cannot show that his failure to comply with that duty is justified.

(3) For the purposes of this section, treatment is justified only if—

(a) in the opinion of the provider of services, one or more of the conditions mentioned in subsection (4) are satisfied; and

(b) it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to hold that opinion.

(4) The conditions are that—

(a) in any case, the treatment is necessary in order not to endanger the health or safety of any person (which may include that of the disabled person);

(b) in any case, the disabled person is incapable of entering into an enforceable agreement, or of giving an informed consent, and for that reason the treatment is reasonable in that case;

(c) in a case falling within section 19(1)(a), the treatment is necessary because the provider of services would otherwise be unable to provide the service to members of the public;

(d) in a case falling within section 19(1)(c) or (d), the treatment is necessary in order for the provider of services to be able to provide the service to the disabled person or to other members of the public;

(e) in a case falling within section 19(1)(d), the difference in the terms on which the service is provided to the disabled person and those on which it is provided to other members of the public reflects the greater cost to the provider of services in providing the service to the disabled person.

(5) Any increase in the cost of providing a service to a disabled person which results from compliance by a provider of services with a section 21 duty shall be disregarded for the purposes of subsection (4)(e).

(6) Regulations may make provision, for purposes of this section, as to circumstances in which—

(a) it is reasonable for a provider of services to hold the opinion mentioned in subsection (3)(a);

(b) it is not reasonable for a provider of services to hold that opinion.

(7) Regulations may make provision for subsection (4)(b) not to apply in prescribed circumstances where—

(a) a person is acting for a disabled person under a power of attorney;

(b) functions conferred by or under \[F127\] the Mental Capacity Act 2005\] are exercisable in relation to a disabled person's property or affairs; or

\[F128\] powers are exercisable in relation to a disabled person’s property or affairs in consequence of the appointment, under the law of Scotland, of a guardian, tutor or judicial factor.\]

(8) Regulations may make provision, for purposes of this section, as to circumstances (other than those mentioned in subsection (4)) in which treatment is to be taken to be justified.

(9) In subsections (3), (4) and (8) “treatment” includes failure to comply with a section 21 duty.]
Duty of providers of services to make adjustments.

(1) Where a provider of services has a practice, policy or procedure which makes it impossible or unreasonably difficult for disabled persons to make use of a service which he provides, or is prepared to provide, to other members of the public, it is his duty to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to change that practice, policy or procedure so that it no longer has that effect.

(2) Where a physical feature (for example, one arising from the design or construction of a building or the approach or access to premises) makes it impossible or unreasonably difficult for disabled persons to make use of such a service, it is the duty of the provider of that service to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to—

(a) remove the feature;  
(b) alter it so that it no longer has that effect;  
(c) provide a reasonable means of avoiding the feature; or  
(d) provide a reasonable alternative method of making the service in question available to disabled persons.

(3) Regulations may prescribe—
(a) matters which are to be taken into account in determining whether any provision of a kind mentioned in subsection (2)(c) or (d) is reasonable; and
(b) categories of providers of services to whom subsection (2) does not apply.

(4) Where an auxiliary aid or service (for example, the provision of information on audio tape or of a sign language interpreter) would—
(a) enable disabled persons to make use of a service which a provider of services provides, or is prepared to provide, to members of the public, or
(b) facilitate the use by disabled persons of such a service,
it is the duty of the provider of that service to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to provide that auxiliary aid or service.

(5) Regulations may make provision, for the purposes of this section—
(a) as to circumstances in which it is reasonable for a provider of services to have to take steps of a prescribed description;
(b) as to circumstances in which it is not reasonable for a provider of services to have to take steps of a prescribed description;
(c) as to what is to be included within the meaning of “practice, policy or procedure”;
(d) as to what is not to be included within the meaning of that expression;
(e) as to things which are to be treated as physical features;
(f) as to things which are not to be treated as such features;
(g) as to things which are to be treated as auxiliary aids or services;
(h) as to things which are not to be treated as auxiliary aids or services.

(6) Nothing in this section requires a provider of services to take any steps which would fundamentally alter the nature of the service in question or the nature of his trade, profession or business.

(7) Nothing in this section requires a provider of services to take any steps which would cause him to incur expenditure exceeding the prescribed maximum.

(8) Regulations under subsection (7) may provide for the prescribed maximum to be calculated by reference to—
(a) aggregate amounts of expenditure incurred in relation to different cases;
(b) prescribed periods;
(c) services of a prescribed description;
(d) premises of a prescribed description; or
(e) such other criteria as may be prescribed.

(9) Regulations may provide, for the purposes of subsection (7), for expenditure incurred by one provider of services to be treated as incurred by another.

(10) This section imposes duties only for the purpose of determining whether a provider of services has discriminated against a disabled person; and accordingly a breach of any such duty is not actionable as such.]

---

**Extent Information**

**E41** Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only.
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

PART III – Discrimination in Other Areas

Textual Amendments

F129 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C11 S. 21(2) applied (N.I.) (1.10.1999) by S.R. 1999/202, art. 2
S. 21(2) applied (1.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/1191, art. 3

C12 S. 21(2) modified (4.12.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Transport Vehicles) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/3190), reg. 8

C13 S. 21(4) applied (N.I.) (1.10.1999) by S.R. 1999/202, art. 3


Commencement Information

I9 S. 21 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); s. 21(3)(5) in force at 26.4.1999 by S.I. 1999/1190, art. 4 and S.R. 1999/196, art. 3; s. 21(1)(2)(d)(4)(6)(10) in force at 1.10.1999 by S.I. 1999/1190, art. 4(g) and S.R. 1999/196, art. 4(g); s. 21(2) in force at 1.10.2004 to the extent that it is not already in force by S.I. 2001/2030, art. 3(a) and S.R. 2001/439, art. 2(a)

Application of sections 19 to 21 to transport vehicles

[21ZA Application of sections 19 to 21 to transport vehicles

(1) Section 19(1)(a), (c) and (d) do not apply in relation to a case where the service is a transport service and, as provider of that service, the provider of services discriminates against a disabled person—
   (a) in not providing, or in providing, him with a vehicle; or
   (b) in not providing, or in providing, him with services when he is travelling in a vehicle provided in the course of the transport service.

(2) For the purposes of section 21(1), (2) and (4), it is never reasonable for a provider of services, as a provider of a transport service—
(a) to have to take steps which would involve the alteration or removal of a physical feature of a vehicle used in providing the service;
(b) to have to take steps which would—
   (i) affect whether vehicles are provided in the course of the service or what vehicles are so provided, or
   (ii) where a vehicle is provided in the course of the service, affect what happens in the vehicle while someone is travelling in it.

(3) Regulations may provide for subsection (1) or (2) not to apply, or to apply only to a prescribed extent, in relation to vehicles of a prescribed description.

(4) In this section—
“transport service” means a service which (to any extent) involves transport of people by vehicle;
“vehicle” means a vehicle for transporting people by land, air or water, and includes (in particular)—
(a) a vehicle not having wheels, and
(b) a vehicle constructed or adapted to carry passengers on a system using a mode of guided transport;
“guided transport” means transport by vehicles guided by means external to the vehicles (whether or not the vehicles are also capable of being operated in some other way).

---

Extent Information
E224 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 21ZA for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

Textual Amendments

Modifications etc. (not altering text)
C57 S. 21ZA(1) excluded (25.1.2010) by The Disability Discrimination (Transport Vehicles) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2009 (S.R. 2009/428), regs. 1, 3
C58 S. 21ZA(2) excluded (25.1.2010) by The Disability Discrimination (Transport Vehicles) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2009 (S.R. 2009/428), regs. 1, 6
C59 S. 21ZA(2)(b) excluded (25.1.2010) by The Disability Discrimination (Transport Vehicles) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2009 (S.R. 2009/428), regs. {4}, {5}

F132 21A Employment services
F133

(1) In [F134]this Act] , “employment services” means—
(a) vocational guidance;
(b) vocational training; or
(c) services to assist a person to obtain or retain employment, or to establish himself as self-employed.
(2) It is unlawful for a provider of employment services, in relation to such services, to
subject to harassment a disabled person—
   (a) to whom he is providing such services, or
   (b) who has requested him to provide such services;
and section 3B (meaning of “harassment”) applies for the purposes of this subsection as it applies for the purposes of Part II.

(3) In their application to employment services, the preceding provisions of this Part have effect as follows.

(4) Section 19 has effect as if—
   (a) after subsection (1)(a), there were inserted the following paragraph—
      “(aa) in failing to comply with a duty imposed on him by subsection (1) of section 21 in circumstances in which the effect of that failure is to place the disabled person at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled in relation to the provision of the service;”;
   (b) in subsection (1)(b), for “section 21” there were substituted “ subsection (2) or (4) of section 21 ”;
   (c) in subsection (2), for “sections 20 to 21ZA” there were substituted sections 20 to 21A.

(5) Section 20 has effect as if—
   (a) after subsection (1), there were inserted the following subsection—
      “(1A) For the purposes of section 19, a provider of services also discriminates against a disabled person if he fails to comply with a duty imposed on him by subsection (1) of section 21 in relation to the disabled person.”;
   (b) in subsection (2)(a), for “a section 21 duty imposed” there were substituted “ a duty imposed by subsection (2) or (4) of section 21 ”;
   (c) after subsection (3), there were inserted the following subsection—
      “(3A) But treatment of a disabled person cannot be justified under subsection (3) if it amounts to direct discrimination falling within section 3A(5).”.

(6) Section 21 has effect as if—
   (a) in subsection (1), for “makes it impossible or unreasonably difficult for disabled persons to make use of” there were substituted places disabled persons at a substantial disadvantage in comparison with persons who are not disabled in relation to the provision of;
   (b) after subsection (1), there were inserted the following subsection—
      “(1A) In subsection (1), “practice, policy or procedure” includes a provision or criterion.”.]

---

**Extent Information**

**E43** E Note: Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only. Prior to that repeal, different versions of this section had been created for N.I. and E.W.S. respectively to reflect the different amendment history for each jurisdiction. This version is based on
the N.I. version as it stood at the date of the repeal. It does not reflect the history of E.W.S. effects prior to the 2010 repeal, which can be found in earlier versions.

Textual Amendments


F133 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 2 (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)

F134 Words in s. 21A(1) substituted (N.I.) (3.7.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 13(2); S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(b)

F135 S. 21A(4)(c) substituted (N.I.) (3.7.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 13(3); S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(b)

\[F136 F137\]

Public authorities

Textual Amendments

F136 Ss. 21B-21E and cross-heading inserted (N.I.) (3.7.2006 for ss. 21D and 21E for the purpose only of exercising any power to make regulations, orders or rules of court, and otherwise 31.12.2007 for all remaining purposes and for all inserted sections) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312) (N.I. 1), arts. 1(2), 4; S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(2)(a); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(b)

F137 Ss. 21B-21E and cross-heading inserted (E.W.S.) (30.6.2005 for ss. 21D and 21E for the purpose only of exercising any power to make regulations, orders or rules of court and otherwise 4.12.2006 for all remaining purposes and for all inserted sections) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. (2), 20(3)-(6); S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(2)(a); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(a)

\[F137\]

21B Discrimination by public authorities E+W+S

\[F138\]

Extent Information

E44 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 21B exists for Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments

F138 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 2 (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
Discrimination by public authorities

(1) It is unlawful for a public authority to discriminate against a disabled person in carrying out its functions.

(2) In this section, and sections 21D and 21E, “public authority”—
   (a) includes any person certain of whose functions are functions of a public nature; but
   (b) does not include any person mentioned in subsection (3).

(3) The persons are—
   (a) either House of Parliament;
   (b) a person exercising functions in connection with proceedings in Parliament;
   (c) the Assembly;
   (d) a person exercising functions in connection with proceedings in the Assembly;
   (e) the Security Service;
   (f) the Secret Intelligence Service;
   (g) the Government Communications Headquarters; and
   (h) a unit, or part of a unit, of any of the naval, military or air forces of the Crown which is for the time being required by the Secretary of State to assist the Government Communications Headquarters in carrying out its functions.

(4) In relation to a particular act, a person is not a public authority by virtue only of subsection (2)(a) if the nature of the act is private.

(5) Regulations may provide for a person of a prescribed description to be treated as not being a public authority for the purposes of this section and sections 21D and 21E.

(6) In the case of an act which constitutes discrimination by virtue of section 55, subsection (1) also applies to discrimination against a person who is not disabled.

(7) Subsection (1)—
   (a) does not apply to anything which is unlawful under any provision of this Act other than subsection (1) or under any provision of the 2005 Order;
   (b) does not, subject to subsections (8) and (9), apply to anything which would be unlawful under any such provision but for the operation of any provision in or made under this Act or that Order.

(8) Subsection (1) does apply in relation to a public authority's function of appointing a person to, and in relation to a public authority's functions with respect to a person as the holder of, an office or post if—
   (a) none of the conditions specified in section 4C(3) is satisfied in relation to the office or post; and
   (b) sections 4D and 4E would apply in relation to an appointment to the office or post if any of those conditions was satisfied.

(9) Subsection (1) does apply in relation to a public authority's functions with respect to a person as candidate or prospective candidate for election to, and in relation to a public authority's functions with respect to a person as elected holder of, an office or post if—
   (a) the office or post is not membership of a House of Parliament, the Assembly or a district council;
   (b) none of the conditions specified in section 4C(3) is satisfied in relation to the office or post; and
(c) sections 4D and 4E would apply in relation to an appointment to the office or post if—
   (i) any of those conditions was satisfied, and
   (ii) section 4F(1) (but not section 4C(5)) was omitted.

(10) Subsections (8) and (9)—
   (a) shall not be taken to prejudice the generality of subsection (1); but
   (b) are subject to section 21C(5).]

**Extent Information**

**E225** This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 21B for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

**Textual Amendments**

[F137 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by **Equality Act 2010** (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)]

[F136](1) Section 21B(1) does not apply to—
   (a) a judicial act (whether done by a court, tribunal or other person); or
   (b) an act done on the instructions, or on behalf, of a person acting in a judicial capacity.

(2) Section 21B(1) does not apply to any act of, or relating to, making, confirming or approving an enactment.

(3) Section 21B(1) does not apply to any act of, or relating to, imposing conditions or requirements of a kind falling within section 59(1)(c).

(4) Section 21B(1) does not apply to—
   (a) a decision not to institute criminal proceedings;
   (b) where such a decision is made, an act done for the purpose of enabling the decision to be made;
   (c) a decision not to continue criminal proceedings; or
   (d) where such a decision is made—
      (i) an act done for the purpose of enabling the decision to be made; or
(5) Section 21B(1) does not apply to an act of a prescribed description.

**21B(5) Meaning of “discrimination” in section 21B**

**E+W+S**

> (1) For the purposes of section 21B(1), a public authority discriminates against a disabled person if—
> 
> (a) for a reason which relates to the disabled person's disability, it treats him less favourably than it treats or would treat others to whom that reason does not or would not apply; and
> 
> (b) it cannot show that the treatment in question is justified under subsection (3), (5) or (7)(c).

> (2) For the purposes of section 21B(1), a public authority also discriminates against a disabled person if—
> 
> (a) it fails to comply with a duty imposed on it by section 21E in circumstances in which the effect of that failure is to make it—
> 
> (i) impossible or unreasonably difficult for the disabled person to receive any benefit that is or may be conferred, or
> 
> (ii) unreasonably adverse for the disabled person to experience being subjected to any detriment to which a person is or may be subjected, by the carrying-out of a function by the authority; and
> 
> (b) it cannot show that its failure to comply with that duty is justified under subsection (3), (5) or (7)(c).

> (3) Treatment, or failure to comply with a duty, is justified under this subsection if—
> 
> (a) in the opinion of the public authority, one or more of the conditions specified in subsection (4) are satisfied; and
it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for it to hold that opinion.

(4) The conditions are—
(a) that the treatment, or non-compliance with the duty, is necessary in order not to endanger the health or safety of any person (which may include that of the disabled person);
(b) that the disabled person is incapable of entering into an enforceable agreement, or of giving an informed consent, and for that reason the treatment, or non-compliance with the duty, is reasonable in the particular case;
(c) that, in the case of treatment mentioned in subsection (1), treating the disabled person equally favourably would in the particular case involve substantial extra costs and, having regard to resources, the extra costs in that particular case would be too great;
(d) that the treatment, or non-compliance with the duty, is necessary for the protection of the rights and freedoms of other persons.

(5) Treatment, or a failure to comply with a duty, is justified under this subsection if the acts of the public authority which give rise to the treatment or failure are a proportionate means of achieving a legitimate aim.

(6) Regulations may make provision, for purposes of this section, as to circumstances in which it is, or as to circumstances in which it is not, reasonable for a public authority to hold the opinion mentioned in subsection (3)(a).

(7) Regulations may—
(a) amend or omit a condition specified in subsection (4) or make provision for it not to apply in prescribed circumstances;
(b) amend or omit subsection (5) or make provision for it not to apply in prescribed circumstances;
(c) make provision for purposes of this section (in addition to any provision for the time being made by subsections (3) to (5)) as to circumstances in which treatment, or a failure to comply with a duty, is to be taken to be justified.

**Extent Information**

**E227** This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 21D for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**


**F137 21E Duties for purposes of section 21D(2) to make adjustments**

**F141** ......................................................
TEXTUAL AMENDMENTS

F141 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F13621E Duty for purposes of section 21D(2) to make adjustments N.I. (1) Subsection (2) applies where a public authority has a practice, policy or procedure which makes it—
(a) impossible or unreasonably difficult for disabled persons to receive any benefit that is or may be conferred, or
(b) unreasonably adverse for disabled persons to experience being subjected to any detriment to which a person is or may be subjected,
by the carrying-out of a function by the authority.
(2) It is the duty of the authority to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for the authority to have to take in order to change that practice, policy or procedure so that it no longer has that effect.
(3) Subsection (4) applies where a physical feature makes it—
(a) impossible or unreasonably difficult for disabled persons to receive any benefit that is or may be conferred, or
(b) unreasonably adverse for disabled persons to experience being subjected to any detriment to which a person is or may be subjected,
by the carrying-out of a function by a public authority.
(4) It is the duty of the authority to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for the authority to have to take in order to—
(a) remove the feature;
(b) alter it so that it no longer has that effect;
(c) provide a reasonable means of avoiding the feature; or
(d) adopt a reasonable alternative method of carrying out the function.
(5) Regulations may prescribe—
(a) matters which are to be taken into account in determining whether any provision of a kind mentioned in subsection (4)(c) or (d) is reasonable;
(b) categories of public authorities to whom subsection (4) does not apply.
(6) Subsection (7) applies where an auxiliary aid or service would—
(a) enable disabled persons to receive, or facilitate the receiving by disabled persons of, any benefit that is or may be conferred, or
(b) reduce the extent to which it is adverse for disabled persons to experience being subjected to any detriment to which a person is or may be subjected, by the carrying-out of a function by a public authority.
(7) It is the duty of the authority to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for the authority to have to take in order to provide that auxiliary aid or service.
(8) Regulations may make provision, for purposes of this section—
(a) as to circumstances in which it is, or as to circumstances in which it is not, reasonable for a public authority to have to take steps of a prescribed description;
(b) as to steps which it is always, or as to steps which it is never, reasonable for a public authority to have to take;
(c) as to what is, or as to what is not, to be included within the meaning of “practice, policy or procedure”;
(d) as to things which are, or as to things which are not, to be treated as physical features;
(e) as to things which are, or as to things which are not, to be treated as auxiliary aids or services.

(9) Nothing in this section requires a public authority to take any steps which, apart from this section, it has no power to take.

(10) This section imposes duties only for the purposes of determining whether a public authority has, for the purposes of section 21B(1), discriminated against a disabled person; and accordingly a breach of any such duty is not actionable as such.

### Extent Information

**E228** This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 21E for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

### Textual Amendments

\[F142\] Private clubs etc.

**F142** Ss. 21F–21J and cross-heading inserted (E.W.S.) (30.6.2005 for ss. 21G, 21 H for certain purposes, 10.10.2005 for s. 21F for certain purposes and 5.12.2005 for all provisions insofar as not already in force) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 12, 20(3)-(6); S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(2)(c); S.I. 2005/2774, arts. 2(a), 3(g) and the same sections and cross-heading inserted (N.I.) (3.7.2006 for ss. 21G and 21 H for certain purposes, 9.11.2007 for s. 21F for certain purposes and 31.12.2007 for all provisions insofar as not already in force) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 13; S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(2)(b); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(1)(2)(g)

### 21F Discrimination by private clubs etc.

\[F143\] This section applies to any association of persons (however described, whether corporate or unincorporate, and whether or not its activities are carried on for profit) if—

(a) it has twenty-five or more members;
(b) admission to membership is regulated by its constitution and is so conducted that the members do not constitute a section of the public within the meaning of section 19(2); and
(c) it is not an organisation to which section 13 applies.

(2) It is unlawful for an association to which this section applies, in the case of a disabled person who is not a member of the association, to discriminate against him—
(a) in the terms on which it is prepared to admit him to membership; or
(b) by refusing or deliberately omitting to accept his application for membership.

(3) It is unlawful for an association to which this section applies, in the case of a disabled person who is a member, or associate, of the association, to discriminate against him—
(a) in the way it affords him access to a benefit, facility or service;
(b) by refusing or deliberately omitting to afford him access to a benefit, facility or service;
(c) in the case of a member—
(i) by depriving him of membership, or
(ii) by varying the terms on which he is a member;
(d) in the case of an associate—
(i) by depriving him of his rights as an associate, or
(ii) by varying those rights; or
(e) in either case, by subjecting him to any other detriment.

(4) It is unlawful for an association to which this section applies to discriminate against a disabled person—
(a) in the way it affords him access to a benefit, facility or service,
(b) by refusing or deliberately omitting to afford him access to a benefit, facility or service, or
(c) by subjecting him to any other detriment, in his capacity as a guest of the association.

(5) It is unlawful for an association to which this section applies to discriminate against a disabled person—
(a) in the terms on which it is prepared to invite him, or permit a member or associate to invite him, to be a guest of the association;
(b) by refusing or deliberately omitting to invite him to be a guest of the association; or
(c) by not permitting a member or associate to invite him to be a guest of the association.

(6) It is unlawful for an association to which this section applies to discriminate against a disabled person in failing in prescribed circumstances to comply with a duty imposed on it under section 21H.

(7) In the case of an act which constitutes discrimination by virtue of section 55, this section also applies to discrimination against a person who is not disabled.

**Extent Information**

**E48** Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only.

**Textual Amendments**

**F143** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A–49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
21G  Meaning of “discrimination”

[144](1) For the purposes of section 21F, an association discriminates against a disabled person if—
   (a) for a reason which relates to the disabled person’s disability, the association treats him less favourably than it treats or would treat others to whom that reason does not or would not apply; and
   (b) it cannot show that the treatment in question is justified.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), treatment is justified only if—
   (a) in the opinion of the association, one or more of the conditions mentioned in subsection (3) are satisfied; and
   (b) it is reasonable, in all the circumstances, for it to hold that opinion.

(3) The conditions are that—
   (a) the treatment is necessary in order not to endanger the health or safety of any person (which may include that of the disabled person);
   (b) the disabled person is incapable of entering into an enforceable agreement, or giving an informed consent, and for that reason the treatment is reasonable in that case;
   (c) in a case falling within section 21F(2)(a), (3)(a), (c)(ii), (d)(ii) or (e), (4)(a) or (c) or (5)(a), the treatment is necessary in order for the association to be able to afford members, associates or guests of the association, or the disabled person, access to a benefit, facility or service;
   (d) in a case falling within section 21F(2)(b), (3)(b), (c)(i) or (d)(i), (4)(b) or (5)(b) or (c), the treatment is necessary because the association would otherwise be unable to afford members, associates or guests of the association access to a benefit, facility or service;
   (e) in a case falling within section 21F(2)(a), the difference between—
      (i) the terms on which membership is offered to the disabled person, and
      (ii) those on which it is offered to other persons,
      reflects the greater cost to the association of affording the disabled person access to a benefit, facility or service;
   (f) in a case falling within section 21F(3)(a), (c)(ii) or (d)(ii) or (4)(a), the difference between—
      (i) the association’s treatment of the disabled person, and
      (ii) its treatment of other members or (as the case may be) other associates or other guests of the association,
      reflects the greater cost to the association of affording the disabled person access to a benefit, facility or service;
   (g) in a case falling within section 21F(5)(a), the difference between—
      (i) the terms on which the disabled person is invited, or permitted to be invited, to be a guest of the association, and
      (ii) those on which other persons are invited, or permitted to be invited, to be guests of the association,
      reflects the greater cost to the association of affording the disabled person access to a benefit, facility or service.
(4) Any increase in the cost of affording a disabled person access to a benefit, facility or service which results from compliance with a duty under section 21H shall be disregarded for the purposes of subsection (3)(e), (f) and (g).

(5) Regulations may—
   (a) make provision, for purposes of this section, as to circumstances in which it is, or as to circumstances in which it is not, reasonable for an association to hold the opinion mentioned in subsection (2)(a);
   (b) amend or omit a condition specified in subsection (3) or make provision for it not to apply in prescribed circumstances;
   (c) make provision as to circumstances (other than any for the time being mentioned in subsection (3)) in which treatment is to be taken to be justified for the purposes of subsection (1).

(6) For the purposes of section 21F, an association also discriminates against a disabled person if—
   (a) it fails to comply with a duty under section 21H imposed on it in relation to the disabled person; and
   (b) it cannot show that its failure to comply with that duty is justified.

(7) Regulations may make provision as to circumstances in which failure to comply with a duty under section 21H is to be taken to be justified for the purposes of subsection (6).

21H  Duty to make adjustments

(1) Regulations may make provision imposing on an association to which section 21F applies—
   (a) a duty to take steps for a purpose relating to a policy, practice or procedure of the association, or a physical feature, which adversely affects disabled persons who—
      (i) are, or might wish to become, members or associates of the association, or
      (ii) are, or are likely to become, guests of the association;
   (b) a duty to take steps for the purpose of making an auxiliary aid or service available to any such disabled persons.
(2) Regulations under subsection (1) may (in particular)—
   (a) make provision as to the cases in which a duty is imposed;
   (b) make provision as to the steps which a duty requires to be taken;
   (c) make provision as to the purpose for which a duty requires steps to be taken.

(3) Any duty imposed under this section is imposed only for the purpose of determining whether an association has, for the purposes of section 21F, discriminated against a disabled person; and accordingly a breach of any such duty is not actionable as such.

21J “Member”, “associate” and “guest”

(1) For the purposes of sections 21F to 21H and this section—
   (a) a person is a member of an association to which section 21F applies if he belongs to it by virtue of his admission to any sort of membership provided for by its constitution (and is not merely a person with certain rights under its constitution by virtue of his membership of some other association), and references to membership of an association shall be construed accordingly;
   (b) a person is an associate of an association to which section 21F applies if, not being a member of it, he has under its constitution some or all of the rights enjoyed by members (or would have apart from any provision in its constitution authorising the refusal of those rights in particular cases).

(2) References in sections 21F to 21H to a guest of an association include a person who is a guest of the association by virtue of an invitation issued by a member or associate of the association and permitted by the association.

(3) Regulations may make provision, for purposes of sections 21F to 21H, as to circumstances in which a person is to be treated as being, or as to circumstances in which a person is to be treated as not being, a guest of an association.
22 Discrimination in relation to premises.

(1) It is unlawful for a person with power to dispose of any premises to discriminate against a disabled person—
   (a) in the terms on which he offers to dispose of those premises to the disabled person;
   (b) by refusing to dispose of those premises to the disabled person; or
   (c) in his treatment of the disabled person in relation to any list of persons in need of premises of that description.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply to a person who owns an estate or interest in the premises and wholly occupies them unless, for the purpose of disposing of the premises, he—
   (a) uses the services of an estate agent, or
   (b) publishes an advertisement or causes an advertisement to be published.

(3) It is unlawful for a person managing any premises to discriminate against a disabled person occupying those premises—
   (a) in the way he permits the disabled person to make use of any benefits or facilities;
   (b) by refusing or deliberately omitting to permit the disabled person to make use of any benefits or facilities; or
   (c) by evicting the disabled person, or subjecting him to any other detriment.

(3A) Regulations may make provision, for purposes of subsection (3)—
   (a) as to who is to be treated as being, or as to who is to be treated as not being, a person who manages premises;
   (b) as to who is to be treated as being, or as to who is to be treated as not being, a person occupying premises.

(4) It is unlawful for any person whose licence or consent is required for the disposal of any premises comprised in, or (in Scotland) the subject of, a tenancy to discriminate against a disabled person by withholding his licence or consent for the disposal of the premises to the disabled person.

(5) Subsection (4) applies to tenancies created before as well as after the passing of this Act.

(6) In this section—
   “advertisement” includes every form of advertisement or notice, whether to the public or not;
   “dispose”, in relation to premises, includes granting a right to occupy the premises, and, in relation to premises comprised in, or (in Scotland) the subject of, a tenancy, includes—
   (a) assigning the tenancy, and
   (b) sub-letting or parting with possession of the premises or any part of the premises;
and “disposal” shall be construed accordingly;
“estate agent” means a person who, by way of profession or trade, provides services for the purpose of finding premises for persons seeking to acquire them or assisting in the disposal of premises; and
“tenancy” means a tenancy created—
(a) by a lease or sub-lease,
(b) by an agreement for a lease or sub-lease,
(c) by a tenancy agreement, or
(d) in pursuance of any enactment.

(7) In the case of an act which constitutes discrimination by virtue of section 55, this section also applies to discrimination against a person who is not disabled.

(8) This section applies only in relation to premises in the United Kingdom.

--- Extent Information ---

E52 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8; see s. 70(6)

--- Textual Amendments ---

F147 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F148 S. 22(3A) inserted (E.W.S.) (30.6.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 16; S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(1)(c) and same subsection inserted (N.I.) (3.7.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 14; S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(b)

[ F149 22A Commonholds  
F150 ........................................ ]

--- Textual Amendments ---

F149 S. 22A inserted (E.W.S. with application to E.W. only) (30.6.2005 for certain purposes, and 4.12.2006 insofar as not already in force) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 17; S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(2)(g); S.I.2005/2774, [art. 4(f)]

F150 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

23 Exemption for small dwellings.

[ F151 (1) Where the conditions mentioned in subsection (2) are satisfied, subsection (1), (3) or (as the case may be) (4) of section 22 does not apply. ]
(2) The conditions are that—
   (a) the relevant occupier resides, and intends to continue to reside, on the premises;
   (b) the relevant occupier shares accommodation on the premises with persons who reside on the premises and are not members of his household;
   (c) the shared accommodation is not storage accommodation or a means of access; and
   (d) the premises are small premises.

(3) For the purposes of this section, premises are “small premises” if they fall within subsection (4) or (5).

(4) Premises fall within this subsection if—
   (a) only the relevant occupier and members of his household reside in the accommodation occupied by him;
   (b) the premises comprise, in addition to the accommodation occupied by the relevant occupier, residential accommodation for at least one other household;
   (c) the residential accommodation for each other household is let, or available for letting, on a separate tenancy or similar agreement; and
   (d) there are not normally more than two such other households.

(5) Premises fall within this subsection if there is not normally residential accommodation on the premises for more than six persons in addition to the relevant occupier and any members of his household.

(6) For the purposes of this section “the relevant occupier” means—
   (a) in a case falling within section 22(1), the person with power to dispose of the premises, or a near relative of his;
   (b) in a case falling within section 22(3), the person managing the premises, or a near relative of his;
   (c) in a case falling within section 22(4), the person whose licence or consent is required for the disposal of the premises, or a near relative of his.

(7) For the purposes of this section—
   “near relative” means a person’s spouse [F153 or civil partner], partner, parent, child, grandparent, grandchild, or brother or sister (whether of full or half blood or [F154 by marriage or civil partnership]); and
   [F155 “partner” means the other member of a couple consisting of—
   (a) a man and a woman who are not married to each other but are living together as husband and wife, or
   (b) two people of the same sex who are not civil partners of each other but are living together as if they were civil partners.]

Textual Amendments

F151 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2 (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F152 S. 23(6)(aa) inserted (E.W.S.) (30.6.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 18; S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(1)(c) and same subsection inserted (N.I.) (3.7.2006)
by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 15; S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(b)

F153 Words in s. 23(7) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act (2004 c. 33), ss. 261(1), 263(10), (Sch. 27 para. 150(2); S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(2)

F154 Words in s. 23(7) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act (2004 c. 33), ss. 261(1), 263(10), (Sch. 27 para. 150; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(2)

F155 S. 23(7): definition of “partner” substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act (2004 c. 33), ss. 261(1), 263(10), (Sch. 27 para. 150(3); S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(2)

24 Meaning of “discrimination”.

[F156](1) For the purposes of [F157] sections 22 and 22A, a person (“A”) discriminates against a disabled person if—

(a) for a reason which relates to the disabled person’s disability, he treats him less favourably than he treats or would treat others to whom that reason does not or would not apply; and

(b) he cannot show that the treatment in question is justified.

(2) For the purposes of this section, treatment is justified only if—

(a) in A’s opinion, one or more of the conditions mentioned in subsection (3) are satisfied; and

(b) it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to hold that opinion.

(3) The conditions are that—

(a) in any case, the treatment is necessary in order not to endanger the health or safety of any person (which may include that of the disabled person);

(b) in any case, the disabled person is incapable of entering into an enforceable agreement, or of giving an informed consent, and for that reason the treatment is reasonable in that case;

(c) in a case falling within section 22(3)(a), the treatment is necessary in order for the disabled person or the occupiers of other premises forming part of the building to make use of the benefit or facility;

(d) in a case falling within section 22(3)(b), the treatment is necessary in order for the occupiers of other premises forming part of the building to make use of the benefit or facility.

[F158](e) in a case to which subsection (3A) applies, the terms are less favourable in order to recover costs which—

(i) as a result of the disabled person having a disability, are incurred in connection with the disposal of the premises, and

(ii) are not costs incurred in connection with taking steps to avoid liability under section 24G(1);

(f) in a case to which subsection (3B) applies, the disabled person is subjected to the detriment in order to recover costs which—

(i) as a result of the disabled person having a disability, are incurred in connection with the management of the premises, and
(ii) are not costs incurred in connection with taking steps to avoid liability under section 24A(1) or 24G(1).]

[F159 (3A) This subsection applies to a case if—
(a) the case falls within section 22(1)(a);
(b) the premises are to let;
(c) the person with power to dispose of the premises is a controller of them; and
(d) the proposed disposal of the premises would involve the disabled person becoming a person to whom they are let.

(3B) This subsection applies to a case if—
(a) the case falls within section 22(3)(c);
(b) the detriment is not eviction;
(c) the premises are let premises;
(d) the person managing the premises is a controller of them; and
(e) the disabled person is a person to whom the premises are let or, although not a person to whom they are let, is lawfully under the letting an occupier of them.

(3C) Section 24G(3) and (4) apply for the purposes of subsection (3A) as for those of section 24G; and section 24A(3) and (4) apply for the purposes of subsection (3B) as for those of section 24A.]

(4) Regulations may make provision, for purposes of this section, as to circumstances in which—
(a) it is reasonable for a person to hold the opinion mentioned in subsection 2(a);
(b) it is not reasonable for a person to hold that opinion.

[F160 (4A) Regulations may make provision for the condition specified in subsection (3)(b) not to apply in prescribed circumstances.]

(5) Regulations may make provision, for purposes of this section, as to circumstances (other than those mentioned in subsection (3)) in which treatment is to be taken to be justified.

Extent Information

E53 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only.

Textual Amendments

F156 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F157 S. 24(1): words "sections 22 and 22A" substituted (E.W.S.) for "section 22" (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 19(2); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f)

F158 S. 24(3)(e)(f) inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 19(3); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f) and same subsections inserted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 16(4); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(m)

F159 S. 24(3A)-(3C) inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 19(4); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f) and same subsections inserted (N.I.)
(31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 16(3); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(m)

F160 S. 24(4A) inserted (E.W.S.) (30.6.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 19(5); S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(1)(c) and same subsection inserted (N.I.) (3.7.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 16(4); S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(b)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

Commencement Information

24A Let premises: discrimination in failing to comply with duty E+W+S

24A Let premises: discrimination in failing to comply with duty N.I.

(1) It is unlawful for a controller of let premises to discriminate against a disabled person—
   (a) who is a person to whom the premises are let; or
   (b) who, although not a person to whom the premises are let, is lawfully under the letting an occupier of the premises.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), a controller of let premises discriminates against a disabled person if—
   (a) he fails to comply with a duty under section 24C or 24D imposed on him by reference to the disabled person; and
   (b) he cannot show that failure to comply with the duty is justified (see section 24K).
(3) For the purposes of this section and sections 24B to 24F, a person is a controller of let premises if he is—
   (a) a person by whom the premises are let; or
   (b) a person who manages the premises.

(4) For the purposes of this section and sections 24B to 24F—
   (a) “let” includes sub-let; and
   (b) premises shall be treated as let by a person to another where a person has granted another a contractual licence to occupy them.

(5) This section applies only in relation to premises in the United Kingdom.
(ii) where he is not the sole person by whom the premises are let, no other person by whom they are let has, used for the purpose of managing the premises the services of a person who, by profession or trade, manages let premises.

(2) Section 24A(1) does not apply if the premises are of a prescribed description.

(3) Where the conditions mentioned in section 23(2) are satisfied, section 24A(1) does not apply.

(4) For the purposes of section 23 “the relevant occupier” means, in a case falling within section 24A(1), a controller of the let premises, or a near relative of his; and “near relative” has here the same meaning as in section 23.]
(a) a controller of let premises receives a request made by or on behalf of a person to whom the premises are let;
(b) it is reasonable to regard the request as a request that the controller take steps in order to provide an auxiliary aid or service; and
(c) either the first condition, or the second condition, is satisfied.

(2) It is the duty of the controller to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to provide the auxiliary aid or service (but see section 24E(1)).

(3) The first condition is that—
   (a) the auxiliary aid or service—
      (i) would enable a relevant disabled person to enjoy, or facilitate such a person's enjoyment of, the premises, but
      (ii) would be of little or no practical use to the relevant disabled person concerned if he were neither a person to whom the premises are let nor an occupier of them; and
   (b) it would, were the auxiliary aid or service not to be provided, be impossible or unreasonably difficult for the relevant disabled person concerned to enjoy the premises.

(4) The second condition is that—
   (a) the auxiliary aid or service—
      (i) would enable a relevant disabled person to make use, or facilitate such a person's making use, of any benefit, or facility, which by reason of the letting is one of which he is entitled to make use, but
      (ii) would be of little or no practical use to the relevant disabled person concerned if he were neither a person to whom the premises are let nor an occupier of them; and
   (b) it would, were the auxiliary aid or service not to be provided, be impossible or unreasonably difficult for the relevant disabled person concerned to make use of any benefit, or facility, which by reason of the letting is one of which he is entitled to make use.]
Duty for purposes of section 24A(2) to change practices, terms, etc. [N.I.]

(1) Subsection (3) applies where—

(a) a controller of let premises has a practice, policy or procedure which has the effect of making it impossible, or unreasonably difficult, for a relevant disabled person—

(i) to enjoy the premises, or

(ii) to make use of any benefit, or facility, which by reason of the letting is one of which he is entitled to make use, or

(b) a term of the letting has that effect, and (in either case) the conditions specified in subsection (2) are satisfied.

(2) Those conditions are—

(a) that the practice, policy, procedure or term would not have that effect if the relevant disabled person concerned did not have a disability;

(b) that the controller receives a request made by or on behalf of a person to whom the premises are let; and

(c) that it is reasonable to regard the request as a request that the controller take steps in order to change the practice, policy, procedure or term so as to stop it having that effect.

(3) It is the duty of the controller to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to change the practice, policy, procedure or term so as to stop it having that effect (but see section 24E(1)).]
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
PART III – Discrimination in Other Areas

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

24E Sections 24C and 24D: supplementary and interpretation E+W+S

(1) For the purposes of sections 24C and 24D, it is never reasonable for a controller of let premises to have to take steps consisting of or including the removal or alteration of a physical feature.

(2) Sections 24C and 24D impose duties only for the purpose of determining whether a person has, for the purposes of section 24A, discriminated against another; and accordingly a breach of any such duty is not actionable as such.

(3) In sections 24C and 24D “relevant disabled person”, in relation to let premises, means a particular disabled person—
   (a) who is a person to whom the premises are let; or
   (b) who, although not a person to whom the premises are let, is lawfully under the letting an occupier of the premises.

(4) For the purposes of section 24C and 24D, the terms of a letting of premises include the terms of any agreement which relates to the letting of the premises.

24F Let premises: victimisation of persons to whom premises are let E+W+S

(1) For the purposes of section 24F, a victim of race discrimination is a person who is a member of a racial group and is treated less favourably than another person who is not a member of that racial group or a person who is a member of a different racial group than the other person.
Let premises: victimisation of persons to whom premises are let

(1) Where a duty under section 24C or 24D is imposed on a controller of let premises by reference to a person who, although not a person to whom the premises are let, is lawfully under the letting an occupier of the premises, it is unlawful for a controller of the let premises to discriminate against a person to whom the premises are let.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), a controller of the let premises discriminates against a person to whom the premises are let if—
   (a) the controller treats that person (“T”) less favourably than he treats or would treat other persons whose circumstances are the same as T’s; and
   (b) he does so because of costs incurred in connection with taking steps to avoid liability under section 24A(1) for failure to comply with the duty.

(3) In comparing T’s circumstances with those of any other person for the purposes of subsection (2)(a), the following (as well as the costs’ having been incurred) shall be disregarded—
   (a) the making of the request that gave rise to the imposition of the duty; and
   (b) the disability of each person who—
      (i) is a disabled person or a person who has had a disability, and
      (ii) is a person to whom the premises are let or, although not a person to whom the premises are let, is lawfully under the letting an occupier of the premises.
[F161] Premises that are to let: discrimination in failing to comply with duty

E+W+S

.................................................................

Extent Information

E60 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 24G exists for Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments

F161 S. 24A-24L inserted (E.W.S.) (30.6.2005 for ss. 24K and 24L for certain purposes only, otherwise 4.12.2006 for all provisions) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 13, 20(3)-(6); S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(2)(d); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(b)

F168 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F810] Premises that are to let: discrimination in failing to comply with duty

N.I.

(1) Where—
   (a) a person has premises to let, and
   (b) a disabled person is considering taking a letting of the premises,
   it is unlawful for a controller of the premises to discriminate against the disabled person.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), a controller of premises that are to let discriminates against a disabled person if—
   (a) he fails to comply with a duty under section 24J imposed on him by reference to the disabled person; and
   (b) he cannot show that failure to comply with the duty is justified (see section 24K).

(3) For the purposes of this section and sections 24H and 24J, a person is a controller of premises that are to let if he is—
   (a) a person who has the premises to let; or
   (b) a person who manages the premises.

(4) For the purposes of this section and sections 24H and 24J—
   (a) “let” includes sub-let;
   (b) premises shall be treated as to let by a person to another where a person proposes to grant another a contractual licence to occupy them; and references to a person considering taking a letting of premises shall be construed accordingly.

(5) This section applies only in relation to premises in the United Kingdom.]
**Textual Amendments**

**F810** Ss. 24A-24L inserted (N.I.) (3.7.2006 for ss. 24K and 24L for certain purposes only and 31.12.2007 for all provisions insofar as not already in force) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 14; S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(2)(c); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(h)

**F169** Exceptions to section 24G(1) E+W+S

E+W+S

**Extent Information**

**E61** This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 24H exists for Northern Ireland only.

**Textual Amendments**

**F161** S. 24A-24L inserted (E.W.S.) (30.6.2005 for ss. 24K and 24L for certain purposes only, otherwise 4.12.2006 for all provisions) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 13, 20(3)-(6); S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(2)(d); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(b)

**F169** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

**F810** 24H Exceptions to section 24G(1) N.I.

(1) Section 24G(1) does not apply in relation to premises that are to let if the premises are, or have at any time been, the only or principal home of an individual who is a person who has them to let and—
   (a) the individual does not use, and
   (b) where he is not the sole person who has the premises to let, no other person who has the premises to let uses,
   the services of an estate agent (within the meaning given by section 22(6)) for the purposes of letting the premises.

(2) Section 24G(1) does not apply if the premises are of a prescribed description.

(3) Where the conditions mentioned in section 23(2) are satisfied, section 24G(1) does not apply.

(4) For the purposes of section 23 “the relevant occupier” means, in a case falling within section 24G(1), a controller of the premises that are to let, or a near relative of his; and “near relative” has here the same meaning as in section 23.

**Extent Information**

**E236** This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 24H for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).
Duties for purposes of section 24G(2)

1. Subsection (2) applies where—
   (a) a controller of premises that are to let receives a request made by or on behalf of a relevant disabled person;
   (b) it is reasonable to regard the request as a request that the controller take steps in order to provide an auxiliary aid or service;
   (c) the auxiliary aid or service—
      (i) would enable the relevant disabled person to become, or facilitate his becoming, a person to whom the premises are let, but
      (ii) would be of little or no practical use to him if he were not considering taking a letting of the premises; and
   (d) it would, were the auxiliary aid or service not to be provided, be impossible or unreasonably difficult for the relevant disabled person to become a person to whom the premises are let.

2. It is the duty of the controller to take such steps as is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for the controller to have to take in order to provide the auxiliary aid or service (but see subsection (5)).

3. Subsection (4) applies where—
(a) a controller of premises that are to let has a practice, policy or procedure which has the effect of making it impossible, or unreasonably difficult, for a relevant disabled person to become a person to whom the premises are let;
(b) the practice, policy or procedure would not have that effect if the relevant disabled person did not have a disability;
(c) the controller receives a request made by or on behalf of the relevant disabled person; and
(d) it is reasonable to regard the request as a request that the controller take steps in order to change the practice, policy or procedure so as to stop it having that effect.

(4) It is the duty of the controller to take such steps as it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to have to take in order to change the practice, policy or procedure so as to stop it having that effect (but see subsection (5)).

(5) For the purposes of this section, it is never reasonable for a controller of premises that are to let to have to take steps consisting of or including the removal or alteration of a physical feature.

(6) In this section “relevant disabled person”, in relation to premises that are to let, means a particular disabled person who is considering taking a letting of the premises.

(7) This section imposes duties only for the purpose of determining whether a person has, for the purposes of section 24G, discriminated against another; and accordingly a breach of any such duty is not actionable as such.]
24K Let premises and premises to let: justification

(1) For the purposes of sections 24A(2) and 24G(2), a person’s failure to comply with a duty is justified only if—
   (a) in his opinion, a condition mentioned in subsection (2) is satisfied; and
   (b) it is reasonable, in all the circumstances of the case, for him to hold that opinion.

(2) The conditions are—
   (a) that it is necessary to refrain from complying with the duty in order not to endanger the health or safety of any person (which may include that of the disabled person concerned);
   (b) that the disabled person concerned is incapable of entering into an enforceable agreement, or of giving informed consent, and for that reason the failure is reasonable.

(3) Regulations may—
   (a) make provision, for purposes of this section, as to circumstances in which it is, or as to circumstances in which it is not, reasonable for a person to hold the opinion mentioned in subsection (1)(a);
   (b) amend or omit a condition specified in subsection (2) or make provision for it not to apply in prescribed circumstances;
   (c) make provision, for purposes of this section, as to circumstances (other than any for the time being mentioned in subsection (2)) in which a failure is to be taken to be justified.

Extent Information

E238 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 24K for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

Textual Amendments

F810 Ss. 24A-24L inserted (N.I.) (3.7.2006 for ss. 24K and 24L for certain purposes only and 31.12.2007 for all provisions insofar as not already in force)) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 14; S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(2)(e); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(h)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)


F172 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

| F24L Sections 24 to 24K: power to make supplementary provision | E+W+S |

..............................................................
Regulations may make provision, for purposes of sections 24(3A) and (3B) and 24A to 24K—

(a) as to circumstances in which premises are to be treated as let to a person;
(b) as to circumstances in which premises are to be treated as not let to a person;
(c) as to circumstances in which premises are to be treated as being, or as not being, to let;
(d) as to who is to be treated as being, or as to who is to be treated as not being, a person who, although not a person to whom let premises are let, is lawfully under the letting an occupier of the premises;
(e) as to who is to be treated as being, or as to who is to be treated as not being, a person by whom premises are let;
(f) as to who is to be treated as having, or as to who is to be treated as not having, premises to let;
(g) as to who is to be treated as being, or as to who is to be treated as not being, a person who manages premises;
(h) as to things which are, or as to things which are not, to be treated as auxiliary aids or services;
(i) as to what is, or as to what is not, to be included within the meaning of “practice, policy or procedure”;
(j) as to circumstances in which it is, or as to circumstances in which it is not, reasonable for a person to have to take steps of a prescribed description;
(k) as to steps which it is always, or as to steps which it is never, reasonable for a person to have to take;
(l) as to circumstances in which it is, or as to circumstances in which it is not, reasonable to regard a request as being of a particular kind;
(m) as to things which are, or as to things which are not, to be treated as physical features;
(n) as to things which are, or as to things which are not, to be treated as alterations of physical features.

The powers under subsections (1)(j) and (k) are subject to sections 24E(1) and 24J(5).
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
PART III – Discrimination in Other Areas

[Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.]
[Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)]

Extent Information
E239 This section extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate s. 24L for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

Textual Amendments
F810 Ss. 24A-24L inserted (N.I.) (3.7.2006 for ss. 24K and 24L for certain purposes only and 31.12.2007 for all provisions insofar as not already in force) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 14; S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(2)(e); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(h)

[Premises provisions do not apply where other provisions operate E+W+S]

Extent Information
E65 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 24M exists for Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments
F173 S. 24M inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 20; S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f)
F174 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[Premises provisions do not apply where other provisions operate N.I.]

(1) Sections 22 to 24L do not apply—
(a) in relation to the provision of premises by a provider of services where he provides the premises in providing services to members of the public;
(b) in relation to the provision, in the course of a Part II relationship, of premises by the regulated party to the other party;
(c) in relation to the provision of premises to a student or prospective student—
(i) by a responsible body within the meaning of Chapter I or II of Part III of the 2005 Order, or
(ii) by an authority in discharging any functions mentioned in Article 19(1) of the 2005 Order; or
(d) to anything which is unlawful under section 21F or which would be unlawful under that section but for the operation of any provision in or made under this Act.

(2) Subsection (1)(a) has effect subject to any prescribed exceptions.

(3) In subsection (1)(a) “provider of services”, and providing services, have the same meaning as in section 19.

(4) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b)—
(a) “Part II relationship” means a relationship during the course of which an act of discrimination against, or harassment of, one party to the relationship by the other party to it is unlawful under sections 4 to 15C; and

(b) in relation to a Part II relationship, “regulated party” means the party whose acts of discrimination, or harassment, are made unlawful by sections 4 to 15C.

(5) In subsection (1)(c) “student” includes pupil.

---

**Enforcement, remedies and procedure.**

[F175](1) A claim by any person that another person—

(a) has discriminated against him in a way which is unlawful under this Part; or

(b) is by virtue of section 57 or 58 to be treated as having discriminated against him in such a way,

may be made the subject of civil proceedings in the same way as any other claim in tort [F176] . . . for breach of statutory duty.

(2) For the avoidance of doubt it is hereby declared that damages in respect of discrimination in a way which is unlawful under this Part may include compensation for injury to feelings whether or not they include compensation under any other head.

(3) Proceedings in [F177] Northern Ireland] shall be brought only in a county court.

(4) [F178] . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

(5) The remedies available in such proceedings are those which are available in the High Court [F179] . . .

(6) Part II of Schedule 3 makes further provision about the enforcement of this Part and about procedure.

[F180](6A) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to a claim by a person that another person—

(a) has discriminated against him in relation to the provision under a group insurance arrangement of facilities by way of insurance; or

(b) is by virtue of section 57 or 58 to be treated as having discriminated against him in relation to the provision under such an arrangement of such facilities.

[F181][F182](7) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to a claim by a person that another person—

(a) has discriminated against him in relation to the provision of employment services; or
(b) is by virtue of section 57 or 58 to be treated as having discriminated against him in relation to the provision of employment services.

(8) A claim—
(a) of the kind referred to in subsection (6A) or (7); or
(b) by a person that another—
(i) has subjected him to harassment in a way which is unlawful under section 21A(2), or
(ii) is by virtue of section 57 or 58 to be treated as having subjected him to harassment in such a way,
may be presented as a complaint to an industrial tribunal.]

(9) Section 17A(1A) to (7) and paragraphs 3 and 4 of Schedule 3 apply in relation to a complaint under subsection (8) as if it were a complaint under section 17A(1) (and paragraphs 6 to 8 of Schedule 3 do not apply in relation to such a complaint).]

---

**Validity and revision of certain agreements.**

[F183](1) Any term in a contract for the provision of goods, facilities or services or in any other agreement is void so far as it purports to—
(a) require a person to do anything which would contravene any provision of, or made under, this Part,
(b) exclude or limit the operation of any provision of this Part, or
(c) prevent any person from making a claim under this Part.
(1A) Subsection (1) does not apply to—

(a) any term in a contract for the provision of employment services;

(b) any term in a contract which is a group insurance arrangement; or

(c) a term which—

(i) is in an agreement which is not a contract of either of those kinds, and

(ii) relates to the provision of employment services or the provision under a group insurance arrangement of facilities by way of insurance.

(2) Paragraphs (b) and (c) of subsection (1) do not apply to an agreement settling a claim to which section 25 applies.

(3) On the application of any person interested in an agreement to which subsection (1) applies, a county court or a sheriff court may make such order as it thinks just for modifying the agreement to take account of the effect of subsection (1).

(4) No such order shall be made unless all persons affected have been—

(a) given notice of the application; and

(b) afforded an opportunity to make representations to the court.

(5) Subsection (4) applies subject to any rules of court providing for that notice to be dispensed with.

(6) An order under subsection (3) may include provision as respects any period before the making of the order.

Extent Information
E67 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8; see s. 70(6)

Textual Amendments
F183 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(h)

F184 S. 26(1A) substituted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 22; S.I. 2005/2774, art. 3(j) and the same sub-provision substituted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 19; S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(b)

27 Alterations to premises occupied under leases.

(1) This section applies where—

(a) a provider of services, a public authority (within the meaning given by section 21B) or an association to which section 21F applies (“the occupier”) occupies premises under a lease;

(b) but for this section, the occupier would not be entitled to make a particular alteration to the premises; and
(c) the alteration is one which the occupier proposes to make in order to comply with a section 21 duty \[F188\] or a duty imposed under section 21E or 21H.

(2) Except to the extent to which it expressly so provides, the lease shall have effect by virtue of this subsection as if it provided—

(a) for the occupier to be entitled to make the alteration with the written consent of the lessor;

(b) for the occupier to have to make a written application to the lessor for consent if he wishes to make the alteration;

(c) if such an application is made, for the lessor not to withhold his consent unreasonably; and

(d) for the lessor to be entitled to make his consent subject to reasonable conditions.

(3) In this section—

“lease” includes a tenancy, sub-lease or sub-tenancy and an agreement for a lease, tenancy, sub-lease or sub-tenancy; and

“sub-lease” and “sub-tenancy” have such meaning as may be prescribed.

(4) If the terms and conditions of a lease—

(a) impose conditions which are to apply if the occupier alters the premises, or

(b) entitle the lessor to impose conditions when consenting to the occupier’s altering the premises,

the occupier is to be treated for the purposes of subsection (1) as not being entitled to make the alteration.

(5) Part II of Schedule 4 supplements the provisions of this section.\]
Conciliation of disputes.

(1) The Commission may make arrangements with any other person for the provision of conciliation services by, or by persons appointed by, that person in relation to disputes arising under this Part.

(2) In deciding what arrangements (if any) to make, the Commission shall have regard to the desirability of securing, so far as reasonably practicable, that conciliation services are available for all disputes arising under this Part which the parties may wish to refer to conciliation.

(3) No member or employee of the Commission may provide conciliation services in relation to disputes arising under this Part.

(4) The Commission shall ensure that any arrangements under this section include appropriate safeguards to prevent the disclosure to members or employees of the Commission of information obtained by a person in connection with the provision of conciliation services in pursuance of the arrangements.

(5) Subsection (4) does not apply to information relating to a dispute which is disclosed with the consent of the parties to that dispute.

(6) Subsection (4) does not apply to information which—

(a) is not identifiable with a particular dispute or a particular person; and

(b) is reasonably required by the Commission for the purpose of monitoring the operation of the arrangements concerned.

(7) Anything communicated to a person while providing conciliation services in pursuance of any arrangements under this section is not admissible in evidence in any proceedings except with the consent of the person who communicated it to that person.

(8) In this section—

“the Commission” means the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland; and

“conciliation services” means advice and assistance provided by a conciliator to the parties to a dispute with a view to promoting its settlement otherwise than through the courts.}
PART IV
EDUCATION

[Pt. IV: Chapter heading, cross-heading and s. 28A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 11(1) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1]

[Duties of responsible bodies]
28A Discrimination against disabled pupils and prospective pupils

Textual Amendments
F193 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28B Meaning of “discrimination”

Textual Amendments
F194 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28C Disabled pupils not to be substantially disadvantaged

Textual Amendments
F195 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)
C21 S. 28C: Functions of a local education authority made exercisable by authorised persons (1.4.2002) by S.I. 2002/928, art. 3, Sch. 3 para. (q)

28D Accessibility strategies and plans

Textual Amendments
F196 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
28E Accessibility strategies and plans: procedure

Textual Amendments
F197 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28F Duty of education authorities not to discriminate

Textual Amendments
F199 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28G Residual duty: supplementary provisions

Textual Amendments
F200 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Enforcement: England and Wales

Textual Amendments
F201 Pt. IV Ch. 1: Cross-heading and s. 28H inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 17(1) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part IV – Education
Chapter 1 – SCHOOLS

28H  

Textual Amendments

28I  Jurisdiction and powers of the Tribunal

Textual Amendments

28A  Jurisdiction and powers of the Tribunal – Wales

Textual Amendments

28B  Case friends – Wales

Textual Amendments

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for
the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

PROSPECTIVE
28IC  Advice and information — Wales

Textual Amendments

F208 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28ID Resolution of disputes — Wales

Textual Amendments

F209 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28IE Independent advocacy services — Wales

Textual Amendments

F210 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28J Procedure
28JA Appeal from the Welsh Tribunal to the Upper Tribunal

Textual Amendments
F212 S. 28JA inserted (E.W.S.) (3.11.2008) by The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/2833), art. 9(1), Sch. 3 para. 118
F213 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28K Admissions

Textual Amendments
F214 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28L Exclusions

Textual Amendments
F215 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28M Roles of the Secretary of State and the [F216 Welsh Ministers]

Textual Amendments
F216 S. 28M: words in heading substituted by The Government of Wales Act 2006 (Consequential Modifications and Transitional Provisions) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1388), arts. 1, 3, Sch. 1 para. 54(2), the amending provision coming into force immediately after the end of "the initial period" (which ended with the day of the first appointment of a First Minister on 25.5.2007) - see s. 161(5) of the Government of Wales Act 2006.
F217 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I.
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part IV – Education
Chapter 1 – SCHOOLS

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[218]Enforcement: Scotland

Textual Amendments
F218 Pt. IV Ch. 1: Cross-heading and s. 28N inserted (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 23 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

28N Civil proceedings
F219

Textual Amendments
F219 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[220]Agreements relating to enforcement

Textual Amendments
F220 Pt. IV Ch. 1: Cross-heading and s. 28P inserted (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 24 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

28P Validity and revision of agreements of responsible bodies
F221

Textual Amendments
F221 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[222]Interpretation of Chapter 1

Textual Amendments
F222 Pt. IV Ch. 1: Cross-heading and s. 28Q inserted (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 25 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part IV – Education
Chapter 2 – FURTHER AND HIGHER EDUCATION

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for
the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

28Q Interpretation

Textual Amendments

Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[\textit{\textbf{\textsuperscript{F224}CHAPTER 2}}

FURTHER AND HIGHER EDUCATION]

Textual Amendments

Pt. IV Ch. 2: Chapter heading, cross-heading and s. 28R inserted (E.W.S) (30.5.2002 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 26 (with s. 43(13); S.I. 2002/1647, art. 3; S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

[\textit{\textbf{\textsuperscript{F225}Duties of responsible bodies}]

Textual Amendments

Pt. IV Ch. 2: Cross-heading and s. 28R inserted (30.5.2002 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 26 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/1647, art. 3; S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

28R Discrimination against disabled students and prospective students

Textual Amendments

Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28S Meaning of “discrimination”

Textual Amendments

Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I.
28SA Meaning of “harassment“

Textual Amendments
F228 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28T Responsible bodies' duties to make adjustments

Textual Amendments
F229 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28U Further education etc. provided by [F231local authorities] and schools

Textual Amendments
F231 Words in s. 28U heading substituted (5.5.2010) by The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities (Integration of Functions) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/1158), art. 1, Sch. 2 para. 40(7)(a)
F232 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
Textual Amendments

F233 Cross-heading inserted after s. 28U (30.6.2006 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.9.2006) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment) (Further and Higher Education) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/1721), regs. 1, 11

28UA Relationships which have come to an end

F234 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Textual Amendments

F234 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28UB Instructions and pressure to discriminate

F235 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Textual Amendments

F235 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28UC Discriminatory advertisements

F236 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Textual Amendments

F236 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F237 Enforcement, etc.
28V Enforcement, remedies and procedure

Textual Amendments
F238 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28W Occupation of premises by educational institutions

Textual Amendments
F239 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28X Validity and revision of agreements

Textual Amendments
F240 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

29 Education of disabled persons.

Textual Amendments
F241 S. 29 repealed (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 40(1), Sch. 9 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part IV – Education
Chapter 2 – FURTHER AND HIGHER EDUCATION

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

### Duties of funding councils

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F242</strong> Pt. IV Ch. 2: Cross-heading inserted before s. 30 (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 34(4) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Further and higher education of disabled persons. 1992 c.13.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>E71</strong> In the application of the Act to Northern Ireland, this section is omitted; see s. 70(6), Sch. 8 paras. 1, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F243</strong> Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Further and higher education of disabled persons: Scotland. 1992 c. 37.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>E72</strong> In the application of the Act to Northern Ireland, this section is omitted; see s. 70(6), Sch. 8 paras. 1, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F244</strong> Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Interpretation of Chapter 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F245</strong> Pt. IV Ch. 2: Cross-heading and s. 31A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 33 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Interpretation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F246</strong> Interpretation of Chapter 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F245</strong> Pt. IV Ch. 2: Cross-heading and s. 31A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 33 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part IV – Education
Chapter 2A – General Qualifications Bodies
Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

---

Textual Amendments
F246 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

---

CHAPTER 2A

GENERAL QUALIFICATIONS BODIES

Textual Amendments
F247 Pt. 4 Ch. 2A (ss. 31AA-31AF) inserted (E.W.S) (11.6.2007 for ss. 31AA, 31AD and 31AE for certain purposes, and for s. 31AF, otherwise in force for all provisions at 1.9.2007) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 15, 20(3)-(6); S.I 2007/1555, arts. 2, 3(a)

---

31AA General qualifications bodies: discrimination and harassment

Textual Amendments
F248 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

31AB Meaning of “discrimination”

Textual Amendments
F249 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

31AC Meaning of “harassment”

Textual Amendments
F250 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I.
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

Part IV – Education

Chapter 2A – General Qualifications Bodies

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for
the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

31AD General qualifications bodies: duty to make adjustments

F251

Textual Amendments

F251 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Enforcement, remedies and procedures

F252, 31ADA F253

Textual Amendments

F252 S. 31ADA inserted (1.9.2007) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment etc.) (General Qualifications Bodies) (Alteration of Premises and Enforcement) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/2405), regs. 1(2), 3

F253 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Alterations to premises occupied under leases

F254, 31ADB F255

Textual Amendments

F254 S. 31ADB inserted (1.9.2007) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment etc.) (General Qualifications Bodies) (Alteration of Premises and Enforcement) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/2405), regs. 1(2), 5 (with regs. 8-13)

F255 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

31AE Chapter 2A: claims, leased premises and certain agreements

F256
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

Part IV – Education

Chapter 3 – SUPPLEMENTARY

[Textual Amendments]

31AF  Chapter 2A: duty to consult before making regulations

[F257] .................................................

31B  Conciliation for disputes

[F259] .................................................

31C  Application to Isles of Scilly

[F260] .................................................
PART V
PUBLIC TRANSPORT

Taxis

32 Taxi accessibility regulations.

[\[F261\] (1) The Department of the Environment may make regulations (“taxi accessibility regulations”) for the purpose of securing that it is possible—
   (a) for disabled persons—
      (i) to get into and out of taxis in safety;
      (ii) to be carried in taxis in safety and in reasonable comfort; and
   (b) for disabled persons in wheelchairs—
      (i) to be conveyed in safety into and out of taxis while remaining in their wheelchairs; and
      (ii) to be carried in taxis in safety and in reasonable comfort while remaining in their wheelchairs.

(2) Taxi accessibility regulations may, in particular—
   (a) require any regulated taxi to conform with provisions of the regulations as to—
      (i) the size of any door opening which is for the use of passengers;
      (ii) the floor area of the passenger compartment;
      (iii) the amount of headroom in the passenger compartment;
      (iv) the fitting of restraining devices designed to ensure the stability of a wheelchair while the taxi is moving;
   (b) require the driver of any regulated taxi which is plying for hire, or which has been hired, to comply with provisions of the regulations as to the carrying of ramps or other devices designed to facilitate the loading and unloading of wheelchairs;
   (c) require the driver of any regulated taxi in which a disabled person who is in a wheelchair is being carried (while remaining in his wheelchair) to comply with provisions of the regulations as to the position in which the wheelchair is to be secured.

(3) The driver of a regulated taxi which is plying for hire, or which has been hired, is guilty of an offence if—
   (a) he fails to comply with any requirement imposed on him by the regulations; or
   (b) the taxi fails to conform with any provision of the regulations with which it is required to conform.

(4) A person who is guilty of such an offence is liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

(5) In this section—
   “passenger compartment” has such meaning as may be prescribed;
   “regulated taxi” means any taxi to which the regulations are expressed to apply;
   [\[F263\] “taxi” means a vehicle which—

Designated transport facilities.

1 F264 (1) In this section “a franchise agreement” means a contract entered into by the operator of a designated transport facility for the provision by the other party to the contract of hire car services—

(a) for members of the public using any part of the transport facility; and
(b) which involve vehicles entering any part of that facility.

(2) The F265 appropriate national authority] may by regulations provide for the application of any taxi provision in relation to—

(a) vehicles used for the provision of services under a franchise agreement; or
(b) the drivers of such vehicles.

(3) Any regulations under subsection (2) may apply any taxi provision with such modifications as the F266 authority making the regulations] considers appropriate.

(4) In this section—

F267 appropriate national authority means—

(a) in relation to transport facilities in England and Wales, the Secretary of State, and
(b) in relation to transport facilities in Scotland, the Scottish Ministers (but see subsection (5));]
“designated” means designated for the purposes of this section by an order made by the [F265 appropriate national authority];
“hire car” has such meaning as may be [F268 specified by regulations made by the appropriate national authority];
“operator”, in relation to a transport facility, means any person who is concerned with the management or operation of the facility;
“taxi provision” means any provision of—
(a) this Act, or
(b) regulations made in pursuance of section 20(2A) of the [M1 Civic Government (Scotland) Act 1982],

which applies in relation to taxis or the drivers of taxis; and
“transport facility” means any premises which form part of any port, airport, railway station or bus station.

[F269(5) The Secretary of State may, for the purposes mentioned in section 2(2) of the European Communities Act 1972 (implementation of Community obligations etc. of the United Kingdom), exercise the powers conferred by this section on the Scottish Ministers.]

---

**Extent Information**

E74 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 17; see s. 70(6)

**Textual Amendments**

F264 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F265 Words in s. 33(2)(4) substituted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 26(2); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 3(j)

F266 Words in s. 33(3) substituted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 26(3); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 3(j)

F267 S. 33(4): definition of “appropriate national authority” inserted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 26(4); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 3(j)

F268 S. 33(4): words in definition of “prescribed” substituted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 26(5); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 3(j)

F269 S. 33(5) inserted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 26(6); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 3(j)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C23 S. 33: transfer of certain functions (S.) (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1750, arts. 1, 2, Sch. 1 (with art. 7); S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3

C24 Ss. 32-34: transfer of functions (N.I.) (8.5.2016) from the Department of the Environment to the Department for Infrastructure by The Departments (Transfer of Functions) Order (Northern Ireland) 2016 (S.R. 2016/76), art. 1(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 2 (with art. 9)

**Marginal Citations**

M1 1982 c.45.
34 New licences conditional on compliance with taxi accessibility regulations.

[1][F270](1) The Department of the Environment shall not grant a public service vehicle licence under Article 61 of the Road Traffic (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 for a taxi unless the vehicle conforms with those provisions of the taxi accessibility regulations with which it will be required to conform if licensed.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply if such a licence was in force with respect to the vehicle at any time during the period of 28 days immediately before the day on which the licence is granted.

(3) The Department of the Environment may by order provide for subsection (2) to cease to have effect on such date as may be specified in the order.

Extent Information

E75 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only. It incorporates the modifications for N.I. set out in Sch. 8 para. 18; see s. 70(6)

Textual Amendments

F270 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by [Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2] (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C25 Ss. 32-34: transfer of functions (N.I.) (8.5.2016) from the Department of the Environment to the Department for Infrastructure by The Departments (Transfer of Functions) Order (Northern Ireland) 2016 (S.R. 2016/76), art. 1(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 2 (with art. 9)

35 Exemption from taxi accessibility regulations.

[1][F271] . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Extent Information

E76 In the application of the Act to Northern Ireland, this section is omitted; see s. 70(6), Sch. 8 paras. 1, 19

Textual Amendments

F271 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by [Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2] (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
36 Carrying of passengers in wheelchairs.

[\footnotesize F272] (1) This section imposes duties on the driver of a regulated taxi which has been hired—
(a) by or for a disabled person who is in a wheelchair; or
(b) by a person who wishes such a disabled person to accompany him in the [\footnotesize F273 vehicle].

[\footnotesize F274] (1A) This section also imposes duties on the driver of a designated vehicle other than a regulated taxi if—
(a) the designated vehicle is being used to provide a local service (within the meaning of section 2 of the Transport Act 1985), and
(b) a person falling within paragraph (a) or (b) of subsection (1) has indicated to the driver that he wishes to travel on the service.

(2) In this section—
“carry” means carry in the [\footnotesize F275 vehicle] concerned; and
“the passenger” means the disabled person concerned.

(3) The duties are—
(a) to carry the passenger while he remains in his wheelchair;
(b) not to make any additional charge for doing so;
(c) if the passenger chooses to sit in a passenger seat, to carry the wheelchair;
(d) to take such steps as are necessary to ensure that the passenger is carried in safety and in reasonable comfort;
(e) to give such assistance as may be reasonably required—
(i) to enable the passenger to get into or out of the [\footnotesize F275 vehicle];
(ii) if the passenger wishes to remain in his wheelchair, to enable him to be conveyed into and out of the [\footnotesize F275 vehicle] while in his wheelchair;
(iii) to load the passenger’s luggage into or out of the [\footnotesize F275 vehicle];
(iv) if the passenger does not wish to remain in his wheelchair, to load the wheelchair into or out of the [\footnotesize F275 vehicle].

(4) Nothing in this section is to be taken to require the driver of any [\footnotesize F275 vehicle]—
(a) except in the case of a [\footnotesize F275 vehicle] of a prescribed description, to carry more than one person in a wheelchair, or more than one wheelchair, on any one journey; or
(b) to carry any person in circumstances in which it would otherwise be lawful for him to refuse to carry that person.

(5) A driver of a regulated taxi [\footnotesize F276 or designated vehicle] who fails to comply with any duty imposed on him by this section is guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

(6) In any proceedings for an offence under this section, it is a defence for the accused to show that, even though at the time of the alleged offence
[\footnotesize F277 (a) in the case of a regulated taxi,]
the taxi conformed with those provisions of the taxi accessibility regulations with which it was required to conform,
[\footnotesize F278 (b) in the case of a designated vehicle, the vehicle conformed to the accessibility requirements which applied to it.]
it would not have been possible for the wheelchair in question to be carried in safety in the vehicle.

(7) If the licensing authority is satisfied that it is appropriate to exempt a person from the duties imposed by this section—
   (a) on medical grounds, or
   (b) on the ground that his physical condition makes it impossible or unreasonably difficult for him to comply with the duties imposed on drivers by this section, it shall issue him with a certificate of exemption.

(8) A certificate of exemption shall be issued for such period as may be specified in the certificate.

(9) The driver of a regulated taxi is exempt from the duties imposed by this section if—
   (a) a certificate of exemption issued to him under this section is in force; and
   (b) the prescribed notice of his exemption is exhibited on the taxi in the prescribed manner.

(10) The driver of a designated vehicle is exempt from the duties imposed by this section if—
   (a) a certificate of exemption issued to him under this section is in force; and
   (b) he is carrying the certificate on the vehicle.

(11) The driver of a designated vehicle who is exempt under subsection (10) must show the certificate, on request, to a person falling within paragraph (a) or (b) of subsection (1).

(12) In this section—
   “designated vehicle” means a vehicle which appears on a list maintained under section 36A;
   “licensing authority” has the meaning given by section 36A.

---

**Extent Information**

E77 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only and also has effect subject to the modification for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 20; see s. 70(6).

**Textual Amendments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amendment</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F272</td>
<td>Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2 (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F273</td>
<td>S. 36(1)(b): word &quot;vehicle&quot; substituted for &quot;taxi&quot; (E.W.S.) (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. 55(2), 134(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F274</td>
<td>S. 36(1A) inserted (E.W.S.) (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. 55(3), 134(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F275</td>
<td>S. 36(2)(3)(4): word &quot;vehicle&quot; substituted (E.W.S.) for &quot;taxi&quot; (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. 55(4), 134(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F276</td>
<td>Words in s. 36(5) inserted (E.W.S.) (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. 55(5), 134(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F277</td>
<td>Words in s. 36(6) inserted (E.W.S.) (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. 55(6), 134(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F278</td>
<td>Words in s. 36(6) inserted (E.W.S.) (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. 55(6), 134(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F279</td>
<td>S. 36(6): word &quot;vehicle&quot; substituted (E.W.S.) for &quot;taxi&quot; (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. 55(6), 134(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F280</td>
<td>S. 36(10)(11) inserted (E.W.S.) (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. 55(7), 134(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
37 Carrying of guide dogs and hearing dogs.

[F284] (1) This section imposes duties on the driver of a taxi which has been hired—

(a) by or for a disabled person who is accompanied by his guide dog or hearing dog, or

(b) by a person who wishes such a disabled person to accompany him in the taxi.

(2) The disabled person is referred to in this section as “the passenger”.

(3) The duties are—

(a) to carry the passenger’s dog and allow it to remain with the passenger; and

(b) not to make any additional charge for doing so.

(4) A driver of a taxi who fails to comply with any duty imposed on him by this section is guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

(5) If the licensing authority is satisfied that it is appropriate on medical grounds to exempt a person from the duties imposed by this section, it shall issue him with a certificate of exemption.

(6) In determining whether to issue a certificate of exemption, the licensing authority shall, in particular, have regard to the physical characteristics of the taxi which the applicant drives or those of any kind of taxi in relation to which he requires the certificate.

(7) A certificate of exemption shall be issued—
(a) with respect to a specified taxi or a specified kind of taxi; and
(b) for such period as may be specified in the certificate.

(8) The driver of a taxi is exempt from the duties imposed by this section if—
(a) a certificate of exemption issued to him under this section is in force with respect to the taxi; and
(b) the prescribed notice of his exemption is exhibited on the taxi in the prescribed manner.

(9) The Secretary of State may, for the purposes of this section, prescribe any other category of dog trained to assist a disabled person who has a disability of a prescribed kind.

(10) This section applies in relation to any such prescribed category of dog as it applies in relation to guide dogs.

(11) In this section—
“guide dog” means a dog which has been trained to guide a blind person; and
“hearing dog” means a dog which has been trained to assist a deaf person.

### Extent Information

E78 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only and has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 21; see s. 70(6)

### Textual Amendments

F284 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, Sch. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C28 Ss. 36-38: transfer of functions (N.I.) (8.5.2016) from the Department of the Environment to the Department for Infrastructure by The Departments (Transfer of Functions) Order (Northern Ireland) 2016 (S.R. 2016/76), art. 1(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 2 (with art. 9)

### Commencement Information

I15 S. 37 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3)(6), Sch. 8 para. 48(1); s. 37 in force for E.W. at 1.12.2000 for specified purposes and at 31.3.2001 for all other purposes by S.I. 2000/2989, art. 2(a) (b); s. 37 in force for N.I. at 1.6.2001 for specified purposes and at 1.8.2001 for all other purposes by S.R. 2001/163, art. 2(1)

[F285]37A Carrying of assistance dogs in private hire vehicles

[F286](1) It is an offence for the operator of a [F287]taxi to fail or refuse to accept a booking for a [F287]taxi—
(a) if the booking is requested by or on behalf of a disabled person, or a person who wishes a disabled person to accompany him; and
(b) the reason for the failure or refusal is that the disabled person will be accompanied by his assistance dog.

(2) It is an offence for the operator of a [\text{taxi}] to make an additional charge for carrying an assistance dog which is accompanying a disabled person.

(3) It is an offence for the driver of a [\text{taxi}] to fail or refuse to carry out a booking accepted by the operator of the vehicle—
   (a) if the booking was made by or on behalf of a disabled person, or a person who wishes a disabled person to accompany him; and
   (b) the reason for the failure or refusal is that the disabled person is accompanied by his assistance dog.

(4) A person who is guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

(5) If the [\text{Department of the Environment}] is satisfied that it is appropriate on medical grounds to issue a certificate of exemption to a driver in respect of subsection (3) it must do so.

(6) In determining whether to issue a certificate of exemption, the [\text{Department of the Environment}] shall, in particular, have regard to the physical characteristics of the [\text{taxi}] which the applicant drives or those of any kind of [\text{taxi}] in relation to which he requires the certificate.

(7) A certificate of exemption shall be issued—
   (a) with respect to a specified [\text{taxi}] or a specified kind of [\text{taxi}]; and
   (b) for such period as may be specified in the certificate.

(8) No offence is committed by a driver under subsection (3) if—
   (a) a certificate of exemption issued to him under this section is in force with respect to the [\text{taxi}]; and
   (b) the prescribed notice is exhibited on the [\text{taxi}] in the prescribed manner.

(9) In this section—
   “assistance dog” means a dog which—
   (a) has been trained to guide a blind person;
   (b) has been trained to assist a deaf person;
   (c) has been trained by a prescribed charity to assist a disabled person who has a disability which—
      (i) consists of epilepsy; or
      (ii) otherwise affects his mobility, manual dexterity, physical co-ordination or ability to lift, carry or otherwise move everyday objects;
   [\text{booking}” means a taxi booking within the meaning given by section 57(1) of the Taxis Act (Northern Ireland) 2008;]
   [\text{driver}” means a person who holds a taxi driver's licence granted under—
      (a) Article 79A of the Road Traffic (Northern Ireland) Order 1981; or
      (b) section 23 of the Taxis Act (Northern Ireland) 2008;]
   “licensing authority”, in relation to any area of England and Wales, means the authority responsible for licensing private hire vehicles in that area;
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

Part V – Public Transport

Chapter 3 – SUPPLEMENTARY

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

“operator” means a person who holds an operator’s licence granted under section 2 of the Taxis Act (Northern Ireland) 2008;

“taxi” means a vehicle which—

(a) seats not more than 8 passengers in addition to the driver; and

(b) is licensed under Article 61 of the Road Traffic (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 to carry passengers for hire (but not to stand or ply for hire).

Extent Information

Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only. It incorporates the modifications applying to Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 21A; see s. 70(6)

Textual Amendments

S. 37A inserted (31.12.2003 for certain purposes and otherwise 31.3.2004 as respects private hire vehicles licensed in England and Wales, 1.1.2008 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.6.2008 as respects a private hire vehicle licensed by the Department of the Environment in Northern Ireland) by Private Hire Vehicles (Carriage of Guide Dogs etc.) Act 2002 (c. 37), ss. 1(1), 6(2); S.I. 2003/3123, art. 2; S.I. 2007/3477, art. 2

Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Words in s. 37A substituted (N.I.) (31.5.2016) by Taxis Act (Northern Ireland) 2008 (c. 4 (N.I.)), s. 59, {Sch. 2 para. 5(a)}; S.R. 2015/389, art. 2(3), Sch. Pt. 3

Words in s. 37A(5)(6) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 21A of this Act

S. 37A(9): definition of “booking” inserted (N.I.) (31.5.2016) by Taxis Act (Northern Ireland) 2008 (c. 4 (N.I.)), s. 59, {Sch. 2 para. 5(a)(ii)}; S.R. 2015/389, art. 2(3), Sch. Pt. 3

S. 37A(9): definition of "driver" substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 21A of this Act

S. 37A(9): definition of "operator" substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 21A of this Act

Definition in s. 37A(9) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 21A of this Act

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

Ss. 36-38: transfer of functions (N.I.) (8.5.2016) from the Department of the Environment to the Department for Infrastructure by The Departments (Transfer of Functions) Order (Northern Ireland) 2016 (S.R. 2016/76), art. 1(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 2 (with art. 9)

Appeals

Appeal against refusal of exemption certificate

Any person who is aggrieved by the refusal of the Department of the Environment to issue an exemption certificate under section 36, 37 or 37A may appeal to a magistrates' court, a court of summary jurisdiction or, in Scotland, the sheriff court before the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the date of the refusal.

On an appeal to it, the court may direct the Department of the Environment to issue the appropriate certificate of exemption to have effect for such period as may be specified in the direction.

Appeals
(4) Any person who is aggrieved by the decision of a licensing authority to include a vehicle on a list maintained under section 36A may appeal to a magistrates' court or, in Scotland, the sheriff court before the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the date of the inclusion.

(5) In this section “licensing authority” has the meaning given by section 36A.

---

**Extensive Information**

**E80** Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only. It incorporates the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 22; see s. 70(6)

**Textual Amendments**

**F293** S. 38: heading "Appeals" substituted (E.W.S.) for "Appeal against refusal of exemption certificate." (26.1.2009) by virtue of Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. {56(7)}, 134(2)

**F294** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), art. 16; S.I. 2010/2317, Sch. 1, art. 15(1)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

**F295** Words in s. 38(1) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of Sch. 8 para. 22(1) of this Act

**F296** Words in s. 38(1) substituted (31.12.2003 for E.W.S for specified purposes, otherwise 31.3.2004 and 1.1.2008 for N.I. for certain purposes, otherwise 1.6.2008 for N.I.) by Private Hire Vehicles (Carriage of Guide Dogs etc.) Act 2002 (c. 37), ss. 3, 6(2); S.I. 2003/3123, art. 2; S.I. 2007/3477, art. 2

**F297** Words "a magistrates" in s. 38 substituted for "the appropriate" (1.4.2005) by Courts Act 2003 (c. 39), ss. 109(1), 110, Sch. 8 para. 368(2): S.I. 2005/910, art. 3(y)

**F298** S. 38(1): Words "a court of summary jurisdiction" substituted (N.I.) (31.10.2016) for "the appropriate court" by Justice Act (Northern Ireland) 2015 c. 9 (N.I.), s. 106(2), Sch. 1 para. 104(1)(a) (with Sch. 8 para. 1); S.R. 2016/387, art. 2(k) (with art. 3)

**F299** Words in s. 38(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. {56(4)}, 134(2)

**F300** S. 38(2): words "subsection (1)" substituted (E.W.S.) for "this section" (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. {56(5)}, 134(2)

**F301** Words in s. 38(2) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of Sch. 8 para. 22(2) of this Act

**F302** S. 38(3) repealed (1.4.2005) by Courts Act 2003 (c. 39), ss. 109(1)(3), 110, Sch. 8 para. 368(3), Sch. 10; S.I. 2005/910, art. 3(y)(aa) and repealed (N.I.) (31.10.2016) by Justice Act (Northern Ireland) 2015 c. 9 (N.I.), s. 106(2), Sch. 1 para. 104(1)(b) (with Sch. 8 para. 1); S.R. 2016/387, art. 2(k) (with art. 3)

**F303** S. 38(4)(5) inserted (E.W.S.) (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. {56(6)}, 134(2)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C30** S. 38 modified (E.W.S.) (27.11.2009) by The Local Services (Operation by Licensed Hire Cars) Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/2863), regs. [3], {4 Table}

**C31** Ss. 36-38: transfer of functions (N.I.) (8.5.2016) from the Department of the Environment to the Department for Infrastructure by The Departments (Transfer of Functions) Order (Northern Ireland) 2016 (S.R. 2016/76), art. 1(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 2 (with art. 9)

**Commencement Information**

**I16** S. 38 wholly in force at 27.1.2009; s. 38 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3)(6), Sch. 8 para. 48(1); s. 38 in force for E.W. at 1.12.2000 by S.I. 2000/2989, art. 3; s. 38 in force for N.I. at 1.6.2001
39 Requirements as to disabled passengers in Scotland.

Public service vehicles

40 PSV accessibility regulations.

[F304] (1) The Secretary of State may make regulations ("PSV accessibility regulations") for the purpose of securing that it is possible for disabled persons—

(a) to get on to and off regulated public service vehicles in safety and without unreasonable difficulty (and, in the case of disabled persons in wheelchairs, to do so while remaining in their wheelchairs); and

(b) to be carried in such vehicles in safety and in reasonable comfort.

(2) PSV accessibility regulations may, in particular, make provision as to the construction, use and maintenance of regulated public service vehicles including provision as to—

(a) the fitting of equipment to vehicles;

(b) equipment to be carried by vehicles;

(c) the design of equipment to be fitted to, or carried by, vehicles;

(d) the fitting and use of restraining devices designed to ensure the stability of wheelchairs while vehicles are moving;

(e) the position in which wheelchairs are to be secured while vehicles are moving.

(3) Any person who—

(a) contravenes or fails to comply with any provision of the PSV accessibility regulations,

(b) uses on a road a regulated public service vehicle which does not conform with any provision of the regulations with which it is required to conform, or

(c) causes or permits to be used on a road such a regulated public service vehicle, is guilty of an offence.

(4) A person who is guilty of such an offence is liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.

(5) In this section—
“public service vehicle” means a vehicle which is—
(a) adapted to carry more than eight passengers; and
(b) a public service vehicle for the purposes of the Public Passenger Vehicles Act 1981;
“regulated public service vehicle” means any public service vehicle to which the PSV accessibility regulations are expressed to apply.

(6) Different provision may be made in regulations under this section—
(a) as respects different classes or descriptions of vehicle;
(b) as respects the same class or description of vehicle in different circumstances.

(7) Before making any regulations under this section or section 41 or 42 the Secretary of State shall consult the Disabled Persons Transport Advisory Committee and such other representative organisations as he thinks fit.]
(a) with respect to applications for, and the issue of, accessibility certificates;
(b) providing for the examination of vehicles in respect of which applications have been made;
(c) with respect to the issue of copies of accessibility certificates in place of certificates which have been lost or destroyed.

(3) If a regulated public service vehicle is used in contravention of this section, the operator of the vehicle is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.

(4) In this section “operator” has the same meaning as in the Public Passenger Vehicles Act 1981.

---

### Extent Information

**E83** Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 25

### Textual Amendments

**F306** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D)) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C33** Ss. 40-45: transfer of functions (N.I.) (8.5.2016) from the Department of the Environment to the Department for Infrastructure by The Departments (Transfer of Functions) Order (Northern Ireland) 2016 (S.R. 2016/76), art. 1(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 2 (with art. 9)

### Commencement Information

**I18** S. 41 fully in force at 21.1.2003; s. 41 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3)(6), Sch. 8 para. 48(1); s. 41 in force for E.W.S. at 30.8.2000 by S.I. 2000/1969, art. 2; s. 41 in force for N.I. at 21.1.2003 by S.R. 2003/24, art. 2

### Marginal Citations

**M3** 1981 c.14
(4) A vehicle examiner may, after examining (if he thinks fit) the vehicle to which the declaration applies, issue a certificate in the prescribed form ("an approval certificate") that it conforms to the type vehicle.

(5) The Secretary of State may make regulations—
   (a) with respect to applications for, and grants of, approval under subsection (1);
   (b) with respect to applications for, and the issue of, approval certificates;
   (c) providing for the examination of vehicles in respect of which applications have been made;
   (d) with respect to the issue of copies of approval certificates in place of certificates which have been lost or destroyed.

(6) The Secretary of State may at any time withdraw his approval of a type vehicle.

(7) Where an approval is withdrawn—
   (a) no further approval certificates shall be issued by reference to the type vehicle; but
   (b) any approval certificate issued by reference to the type vehicle before the withdrawal shall continue to have effect for the purposes of section 41.

(8) In subsection (3) "authorised person" means a person authorised by the Secretary of State for the purposes of that subsection.

---

**Extent Information**

E84 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 26

**Textual Amendments**

F307 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C34 Ss. 40-45: transfer of functions (N.I.) (8.5.2016) from the Department of the Environment to the Department for Infrastructure by The Departments (Transfer of Functions) Order (Northern Ireland) 2016 (S.R. 2016/76), art. 1(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 2 (with art. 9)

**Commencement Information**

I19 S. 42 fully in force at 21.1.2003; s. 42 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3)(6), Sch. 8 para. 48(1); s. 42 in force for E.W.S. at 30.8.2000 by S.I. 2000/1969, art. 2; s. 42 in force for N.I. at 21.1.2003 by S.R. 3003/24, art. 2

43 Special authorisations.

[F308 (1) The Secretary of State may by order authorise the use on roads of—
   (a) any regulated public service vehicle of a class or description specified by the order, or]
Reviews and appeals.

(1) Subsection (2) applies where—

(a) the Secretary of State refuses an application for the approval of a vehicle under section 42(1); and

(b) before the end of the prescribed period, the applicant asks the Secretary of State to review the decision and pays any fee fixed under section 45.

(2) The Secretary of State shall—

(a) review the decision; and

(b) in doing so, consider any representations made to him in writing, before the end of the prescribed period, by the applicant.

(3) A person applying for an accessibility certificate or an approval certificate may appeal to the Secretary of State against the refusal of a vehicle examiner to issue such a certificate.
(4) An appeal must be made within the prescribed time and in the prescribed manner.

(5) Regulations may make provision as to the procedure to be followed in connection with appeals.

(6) On the determination of an appeal, the Secretary of State may—
   (a) confirm, vary or reverse the decision appealed against;
   (b) give such directions as he thinks fit to the vehicle examiner for giving effect to his decision.

---

**Fees.**

[1] Such fees, payable at such times, as may be prescribed may be charged by the Secretary of State in respect of—
   (a) applications for, and grants of, approval under section 42(1);
   (b) applications for, and the issue of, accessibility certificates and approval certificates;
   (c) copies of such certificates;
   (d) reviews and appeals under section 44.

(2) Any such fees received by the Secretary of State shall be paid by him into the Consolidated Fund.

(3) Regulations under subsection (1) may make provision for the repayment of fees, in whole or in part, in such circumstances as may be prescribed.

(4) Before making any regulations under subsection (1) the Secretary of State shall consult such representative organisations as he thinks fit.]
46 Rail vehicle accessibility regulations.

[311](1) The [312]Department of the Environment] may make regulations (“rail vehicle accessibility regulations”) for the purpose of securing that it is possible—

(a) for disabled persons—
   (i) to get on to and off regulated rail vehicles in safety and without unreasonable difficulty;
   (ii) to be carried in such vehicles in safety and in reasonable comfort; and

(b) for disabled persons in wheelchairs—
   (i) to get on to and off such vehicles in safety and without unreasonable difficulty while remaining in their wheelchairs, and
   (ii) to be carried in such vehicles in safety and in reasonable comfort while remaining in their wheelchairs.

(2) Rail vehicle accessibility regulations may, in particular, make provision as to the construction, use and maintenance of regulated rail vehicles including provision as to—

(a) the fitting of equipment to vehicles;
(b) equipment to be carried by vehicles;
(c) the design of equipment to be fitted to, or carried by, vehicles;
(d) the use of equipment fitted to, or carried by, vehicles;
(c) the toilet facilities to be provided in vehicles;
(f) the location and floor area of the wheelchair accommodation to be provided in vehicles;
(g) assistance to be given to disabled persons.

(3) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

(4) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

[F314(4A) The Department for Regional Development shall exercise the power to make rail vehicle accessibility regulations so as to secure that on and after 1st January 2020 every rail vehicle is a regulated rail vehicle, but this does not affect the powers conferred by subsection (5) or section 47(1) or 67(2).]

(5) Different provision may be made in rail vehicle accessibility regulations—
    (a) as respects different classes or descriptions of rail vehicle;
    (b) as respects the same class or description of rail vehicle in different circumstances;
    (c) as respects different networks.

(6) In this section—
    “network” means any permanent way or other means of guiding or supporting rail vehicles or any section of it;

[F315] “rail vehicle” means a vehicle constructed or adapted to carry passengers by rail;]
    “regulated rail vehicle” means any rail vehicle to which [F317 provisions of] rail vehicle accessibility regulations are expressed to apply; and
    “wheelchair accommodation” has such meaning as may be prescribed.

(7) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

(8) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

(9) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

(10) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

(11) Before making any regulations under subsection (1) or section 47 the [F312Department of the Environment] shall consult [F329such representative organisations as it thinks fit].]
Exemption from rail vehicle accessibility regulations.

(1) The Department for Regional Development may by order (an “exemption order”)—

(a) authorise the use for carriage of a regulated rail vehicle even though the vehicle does not conform with the provisions of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which it is required to conform;

(b) authorise a regulated rail vehicle to be used for carriage otherwise than in conformity with the provisions of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which use of the vehicle is required to conform.

(1A) Authority under subsection (1)(a) or (b) may be for—

(a) any regulated rail vehicle that is specified or is of a specified description; or

(b) use in specified circumstances of—

(i) any regulated rail vehicle, or

(ii) any regulated rail vehicle that is specified or is of a specified description.

(2) Regulations may make provision with respect to exemption orders including, in particular, provision as to—

(a) the persons by whom applications for exemption orders may be made;

(b) the form in which such applications are to be made;

(c) information to be supplied in connection with such applications;

(d) the period for which exemption orders are to continue in force;

(e) the revocation of exemption orders.

(3) After considering any application for an exemption order and consulting the Department of the Environment may—

(a) make an exemption order in the terms of the application;

(b) make an exemption order in such other terms as it considers appropriate;

(c) refuse to make an exemption order.
(4) An exemption order may be made subject to such restrictions and conditions as may be specified.

(5) In this section “specified” means specified in an exemption order.

---

**Extent Information**

E89 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only. Prior to that repeal, different versions of this section had been created for N.I. and E.W.S. respectively to reflect the different amendment history for each jurisdiction. This version is based on the N.I. version as it stood at the date of the repeal. It incorporates the N.I. modifications set out in Sch. 8 para. 31. It does not reflect the history of E.W.S. effects prior to the 2010 repeal, which can be found in earlier versions.

---

**Textual Amendments**

F321 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)

F322 S. 47(1)(1A) substituted (N.I.) (2.9.2013) for s. 47(1) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 8(3); S.R. 2013/216, art. 2(a)

F323 Words in s. 47(3) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 31(2) of this Act

F324 Words in s. 47 substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 31(1) of this Act

F325 Words in s. 47(3) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 31(2) of this Act

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C39 S. 47: transfer of certain functions (N.I.) (1.12.1999) by S.R. 1999/481, art. 6(d), Sch. 4 Pt. IV

---
(b) before the end of the prescribed period, the applicant asks the Secretary of State to review the decision and pays any fee fixed under section 47C.

(6) The Secretary of State shall—
(a) review the decision; and
(b) in doing so, consider any representations made to him in writing, before the end of the prescribed period, by the applicant.]

Extent Information
E90 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 47A exists for Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments
F326 Ss. 47A–47C inserted (E.W.S.) (prosp.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. (7(1)), 20(3)-(6)
F327 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(h) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F812 47A Rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificates N.I.]

(1) A regulated rail vehicle to which this subsection applies shall not be used for carriage unless a rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificate is in force for the vehicle.

(2) Subsection (1) applies to a regulated rail vehicle if the vehicle—
(a) is prescribed; or
(b) is of a prescribed class or description.

(3) A rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificate is a certificate that the Department for Regional Development is satisfied that the regulated rail vehicle conforms with those provisions of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which the vehicle is required to conform.

(4) A rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificate may provide that it is subject to conditions specified in the certificate.

(5) Subsection (6) applies where—
(a) the Department for Regional Development refuses an application for the issue of a rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificate for a regulated rail vehicle; and
(b) before the end of the prescribed period, the applicant asks the Department for Regional Development to review the decision and pays any fee fixed under section 47C.

(6) The Department for Regional Development shall—
(a) review the decision; and
(b) in doing so, consider any representations made to it in writing, before the end of the prescribed period, by the applicant.]
[F326 47B Rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificates: supplementary]

(1) Regulations may make provision with respect to rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificates.

(2) The provision that may be made under subsection (1) includes (in particular)—
   (a) provision for certificates to be issued on application;
   (b) provision specifying conditions to which certificates are subject;
   (c) provision as to the period for which certificates are to continue in force or as to circumstances in which certificates are to cease to be in force;
   (d) provision (other than provision of a kind mentioned in paragraph (c)) dealing with failure to comply with a condition to which a certificate is subject;
   (e) provision for the withdrawal of certificates issued in error;
   (f) provision for the correction of errors in certificates;
   (g) provision with respect to the issue of copies of certificates in place of certificates which have been lost or destroyed;
   (h) provision for the examination of a rail vehicle before a certificate is issued in respect of it.

(3) In making provision of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(a), regulations under subsection (1) may (in particular)—
   (a) make provision as to the persons by whom applications may be made;
   (b) make provision as to the form in which applications are to be made;
   (c) make provision as to information to be supplied in connection with an application, including (in particular) provision requiring the supply of a report of a compliance assessment.

(4) For the purposes of this section, a “compliance assessment” is an assessment of a rail vehicle against provisions of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which the vehicle is required to conform.

(5) In requiring a report of a compliance assessment to be supplied in connection with an application, regulations under subsection (1) may make provision as to the person who has to have carried out the assessment, and may (in particular) require that the assessment be one carried out by a person who has been appointed by the Secretary of State to carry out compliance assessments (an “appointed assessor”).

(6) For the purposes of any provisions in regulations under subsection (1) with respect to the supply of reports of compliance assessments carried out by appointed assessors, regulations under that subsection—
   (a) may make provision about appointments of appointed assessors, including (in particular)—
(i) provision for an appointment to be on application or otherwise than on application;
(ii) provision as to who may be appointed;
(iii) provision as to the form of applications for appointment;
(iv) provision as to information to be supplied with applications for appointment;
(v) provision as to terms and conditions, or the period or termination, of an appointment; and
(vi) provision for terms and conditions of an appointment, including any as to its period or termination, to be as agreed by the Secretary of State when making the appointment;

(b) may make provision authorising an appointed assessor to charge fees in connection with, or incidental to, its carrying-out of a compliance assessment, including (in particular)—

(i) provision restricting the amount of a fee;
(ii) provision authorising fees that contain a profit element; and
(iii) provision for advance payment of fees;

(c) may make provision requiring an appointed assessor to carry out a compliance assessment, and to do so in accordance with any procedures that may be prescribed, if prescribed conditions, which may include conditions as to the payment of fees to the assessor, are satisfied;

(d) shall make provision for the referral to the Secretary of State of disputes between—

(i) an appointed assessor carrying out a compliance assessment, and
(ii) the person who requested the assessment,
relating to which provisions of rail vehicle accessibility regulations the vehicle is to be assessed against or to what amounts to conformity with any of those provisions.

(7) In subsection (6)(b) to (d) “compliance assessment” includes pre-assessment activities (for example, a consideration of how the outcome of a compliance assessment would be affected by the carrying-out of particular proposed work).

---

**Extent Information**

**E91** This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 47B exists for Northern Ireland only.

**Textual Amendments**

**F326** Ss. 47A-47C inserted (E.W.S.) (prosp.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. {7(1)}, 20(3)-(6)

**F328** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
(1) Regulations may make provision with respect to rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificates.

(2) The provision that may be made under subsection (1) includes (in particular)—
   (a) provision for certificates to be issued on application;
   (b) provision specifying conditions to which certificates are subject;
   (c) provision as to the period for which certificates are to continue in force or as to circumstances in which certificates are to cease to be in force;
   (d) provision (other than provision of a kind mentioned in paragraph (c)) dealing with failure to comply with a condition to which a certificate is subject;
   (e) provision for the withdrawal of certificates issued in error;
   (f) provision for the correction of errors in certificates;
   (g) provision with respect to the issue of copies of certificates in place of certificates which have been lost or destroyed;
   (h) provision for the examination of a rail vehicle before a certificate is issued in respect of it.

(3) In making provision of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(a), regulations under subsection (1) may (in particular)—
   (a) make provision as to the persons by whom applications may be made;
   (b) make provision as to the form in which applications are to be made;
   (c) make provision as to information to be supplied in connection with an application, including (in particular) provision requiring the supply of a report of a compliance assessment.

(4) For the purposes of this section, a compliance assessment is an assessment of a rail vehicle against provisions of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which the vehicle is required to conform.

(5) In requiring a report of a compliance assessment to be supplied in connection with an application, regulations under subsection (1) may make provision as to the person who has to have carried out the assessment, and may (in particular) require that the assessment be one carried out by a person who has been appointed by the Department for Regional Development to carry out compliance assessments (an “appointed assessor”).

(6) For the purposes of any provisions in regulations under subsection (1) with respect to the supply of reports of compliance assessments carried out by appointed assessors, regulations under that subsection—
   (a) may make provision about appointments of appointed assessors, including (in particular)—
      (i) provision for an appointment to be on application or otherwise than on application;
      (ii) provision as to who may be appointed;
      (iii) provision as to the form of applications for appointment;
      (iv) provision as to information to be supplied with applications for appointment;
      (v) provision as to terms and conditions, or the period or termination, of an appointment; and
(vi) provision for terms and conditions of an appointment, including any as to its period or termination, to be as agreed by the Department for Regional Development when making the appointment;

(b) may make provision authorising an appointed assessor to charge fees in connection with, or incidental to, its carrying-out of a compliance assessment, including (in particular)—

(i) provision restricting the amount of a fee;

(ii) provision authorising fees that contain a profit element; and

(iii) provision for advance payment of fees;

(c) may make provision requiring an appointed assessor to carry out a compliance assessment, and to do so in accordance with any procedures that may be prescribed, if prescribed conditions, which may include conditions as to the payment of fees to the assessor, are satisfied;

(d) shall make provision for the referral to the Department for Regional Development of disputes between—

(i) an appointed assessor carrying out a compliance assessment, and

(ii) the person who requested the assessment,

relating to which provisions of rail vehicle accessibility regulations the vehicle is to be assessed against or to what amounts to conformity with any of those provisions.

(7) In subsection (6)(b) to (d) “compliance assessment” includes pre-assessment activities (for example, a consideration of how the outcome of a compliance assessment would be affected by the carrying-out of particular proposed work).

Textual Amendments

F812 Ss. 47A-47C inserted (N.I.) (prosp.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 9(1)

PROSPECTIVE

[F326 47C Rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificates: fees E+W+S

[F329 (1) Such fees, payable at such times, as may be prescribed may be charged by the Secretary of State in respect of—

(a) applications for, and the issue of, rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificates;

(b) copies of such certificates;

(c) reviews under section 47A;

(d) referrals of disputes under provision that, in accordance with section 47B(6)(d), is contained in regulations under section 47B(1).

(2) Any such fees received by the Secretary of State shall be paid by him into the Consolidated Fund.

(3) Regulations under subsection (1) may make provision for the repayment of fees, in whole or in part, in such circumstances as may be prescribed.
(4) Before making any regulations under subsection (1) the Secretary of State shall consult such representative organisations as he thinks fit.

### Extent Information

**E92** This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 47C exists for Northern Ireland only.

### Textual Amendments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F326</td>
<td>Ss. 47A-47C inserted (E.W.S.) (prosp.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. {7(1)}, 20(3)-(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F329</td>
<td>Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### E+W 47C Rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificates: fees

(1) Such fees, payable at such times, as may be prescribed may be charged by the Department for Regional Development in respect of—

(a) applications for, and the issue of, rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificates;

(b) copies of such certificates;

(c) reviews under section 47A;

(d) referrals of disputes under provision that, in accordance with section 47B(6)(d), is contained in regulations under section 47B(1).

(2) Any such fees received by the Department for Regional Development shall be paid by it into the Consolidated Fund.

(3) Regulations under subsection (1) may make provision for the repayment of fees, in whole or in part, in such circumstances as may be prescribed.

(4) Before making any regulations under subsection (1) the Department for Regional Development shall consult such representative organisations as it thinks fit.

### Textual Amendments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F812</td>
<td>Ss. 47A-47C inserted (N.I.) (prosp.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 9(1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### E+W 47D Penalty for using rail vehicle without accessibility compliance certificate

PROSPECTIVE
If a regulated rail vehicle to which section 47A(1) applies is used for carriage at a time when no rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificate is in force for the vehicle, the Secretary of State may require the operator of the vehicle to pay a penalty.

**Extent Information**

E93 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 47D exists for Northern Ireland only.

**Textual Amendments**

F330 Ss. 47D-47M inserted (E.W.S.) (prosp.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. {8(1)}, 20(3)-(6)

F331 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

---

If a regulated rail vehicle to which section 47A(1) applies is used for carriage at a time when no rail vehicle accessibility compliance certificate is in force for the vehicle, the Department for Regional Development may require the operator of the vehicle to pay a penalty.

**Textual Amendments**

F813 Ss. 47D-47H, 47J-47M inserted (N.I.) (prosp.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 10(1)

---

Where it appears to the Secretary of State that a regulated rail vehicle does not conform with a provision of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which the vehicle is required to conform, the Secretary of State may give to the operator of the vehicle a notice—

(a) identifying the vehicle, the provision and how the vehicle fails to conform with the provision; and

(b) specifying the improvement deadline.

(2) The improvement deadline specified in a notice under subsection (1) may not be earlier than the end of the prescribed period beginning with the day when the notice is given to the operator.
(3) Subsection (4) applies where—
   (a) the Secretary of State has given a notice under subsection (1);
   (b) the improvement deadline specified in the notice has passed; and
   (c) it appears to the Secretary of State that the vehicle still does not conform with
       the provision identified in the notice.

(4) The Secretary of State may give to the operator a further notice—
   (a) identifying the vehicle, the provision and how the vehicle fails to conform to
       the provision; and
   (b) specifying the final deadline.

(5) The final deadline specified in a notice under subsection (4) may not be earlier than
    the end of the prescribed period beginning with the day when the notice is given to
    the operator.

(6) If—
   (a) the Secretary of State has given a notice under subsection (4) to the operator
       of a regulated rail vehicle, and
   (b) the vehicle is used for carriage at a time after the final deadline when the
       vehicle does not conform with the provision identified in the notice,
       the Secretary of State may require the operator to pay a penalty.

---

**Extent Information**

**E94** This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 47E exists for Northern Ireland only.

**Textual Amendments**

F330 Ss. 47D-47M inserted (E.W.S.) (prosp.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. {8(1), 20(3)-(6)}

F332 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

**(F813 47E Penalty for using rail vehicle that does not conform with accessibility regulations N.I.**

(1) Where it appears to the Department for Regional Development that a regulated rail vehicle does not conform with a provision of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which the vehicle is required to conform, that Department may give to the operator of the vehicle a notice—
   (a) identifying the vehicle, the provision and how the vehicle fails to conform with
       the provision; and
   (b) specifying the improvement deadline.

(2) The improvement deadline specified in a notice under subsection (1) may not be earlier than the end of the prescribed period beginning with the day when the notice is given to the operator.
(3) Subsection (4) applies where—
   (a) the Department for Regional Development has given a notice under subsection (1);
   (b) the improvement deadline specified in the notice has passed; and
   (c) it appears to the Department for Regional Development that the vehicle still does not conform with the provision identified in the notice.

(4) The Department for Regional Development may give to the operator a further notice—
   (a) identifying the vehicle, the provision and how the vehicle fails to conform to the provision; and
   (b) specifying the final deadline.

(5) The final deadline specified in a notice under subsection (4) may not be earlier than the end of the prescribed period beginning with the day when the notice is given to the operator.

(6) If—
   (a) the Department for Regional Development has given a notice under subsection (4) to the operator of a regulated rail vehicle, and
   (b) the vehicle is used for carriage at a time after the final deadline when the vehicle does not conform with the provision identified in the notice,

   the Department for Regional Development may require the operator to pay a penalty.

Textual Amendments

F813  Ss. 47D-47H, 47J-47M inserted (N.I.) (prosp.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 10(1)

F338 47F Penalty for using rail vehicle otherwise than in conformity with accessibility regulations E+W+S

F333  (1) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that a regulated rail vehicle has been used for carriage otherwise than in conformity with a provision of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which use of the vehicle is required to conform, the Secretary of State may give to the operator of the vehicle a notice—

   (a) identifying the provision and how it was breached;
   (b) identifying which of the regulated rail vehicles operated by the operator is or are covered by the notice; and
   (c) specifying the improvement deadline.

   (2) The improvement deadline specified in a notice under subsection (1) may not be earlier than the end of the prescribed period beginning with the day when the notice is given to the operator.

   (3) Subsection (4) applies where—

   (a) the Secretary of State has given a notice under subsection (1);
(b) the improvement deadline specified in the notice has passed; and
(c) it appears to the Secretary of State that a vehicle covered by the notice has after that deadline been used for carriage otherwise than in conformity with the provision identified in the notice.

(4) The Secretary of State may give to the operator a further notice—
(a) identifying the provision and how it was breached;
(b) identifying which of the regulated rail vehicles covered by the notice under subsection (1) is or are covered by the further notice; and
(c) specifying the final deadline.

(5) The final deadline specified in a notice under subsection (4) may not be earlier than the end of the prescribed period beginning with the day when the notice is given to the operator.

(6) If—
(a) the Secretary of State has given a notice under subsection (4), and
(b) a vehicle covered by the notice is at a time after the final deadline used for carriage otherwise than in conformity with the provision identified in the notice,

the Secretary of State may require the operator of the vehicle to pay a penalty.

(7) For the purposes of subsection (1), a vehicle is operated by a person if that person is the operator of the vehicle.

---

**Extent Information**

**E95** This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 47F exists for Northern Ireland only.

**Textual Amendments**

F330 Ss. 47D–47M inserted (E.W.S.) (prosp.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. {8(1)}, 20(3)-(6)

F333 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A–49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(h)

---

**F813 47F Penalty for using rail vehicle otherwise than in conformity with accessibility regulations N.I.**

(1) Where it appears to the Department for Regional Development that a regulated rail vehicle has been used for carriage otherwise than in conformity with a provision of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which use of the vehicle is required to conform, that Department may give to the operator of the vehicle a notice—
(a) identifying the provision and how it was breached;
(b) identifying which of the regulated rail vehicles operated by the operator is or are covered by the notice; and
(c) specifying the improvement deadline.
(2) The improvement deadline specified in a notice under subsection (1) may not be earlier than the end of the prescribed period beginning with the day when the notice is given to the operator.

(3) Subsection (4) applies where—
   (a) the Department for Regional Development has given a notice under subsection (1);
   (b) the improvement deadline specified in the notice has passed; and
   (c) it appears to that Department that a vehicle covered by the notice has after that deadline been used for carriage otherwise than in conformity with the provision identified in the notice.

(4) The Department for Regional Development may give to the operator a further notice—
   (a) identifying the provision and how it was breached;
   (b) identifying which of the regulated rail vehicles covered by the notice under subsection (1) is or are covered by the further notice; and
   (c) specifying the final deadline.

(5) The final deadline specified in a notice under subsection (4) may not be earlier than the end of the prescribed period beginning with the day when the notice is given to the operator.

(6) If—
   (a) the Department for Regional Development has given a notice under subsection (4), and
   (b) a vehicle covered by the notice is at a time after the final deadline used for carriage otherwise than in conformity with the provision identified in the notice,

that Department may require the operator of the vehicle to pay a penalty.

(7) For the purposes of subsection (1), a vehicle is operated by a person if that person is the operator of the vehicle.

Textual Amendments
F813 Ss. 47D-47H, 47J-47M inserted (N.I.) (prosp.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 10(1)
(ii) may enter the vehicle; and

(c) for the purpose of exercising his power under paragraph (a) or (b), may require any person to afford such facilities and assistance with respect to matters under that person’s control as are necessary to enable the power to be exercised.

(2) Where the Secretary of State has given a notice under section 47E(1) or (4), a person authorised by the Secretary of State—

(a) may inspect the vehicle concerned for conformity with the provision specified in the notice;

(b) for the purpose of exercising his power under paragraph (a)—

(i) may enter premises if he has reasonable grounds for suspecting the vehicle to be at those premises, and

(ii) may enter the vehicle; and

(c) for the purpose of exercising his power under paragraph (a) or (b), may require any person to afford such facilities and assistance with respect to matters under that person’s control as are necessary to enable the power to be exercised.

(3) A person exercising power under subsection (1) or (2) shall, if required to do so, produce evidence of his authority to exercise the power.

(4) Where a person obstructs the exercise of power under subsection (1), the Secretary of State may, for purposes of section 47E(1) or 47F(1), draw such inferences from the obstruction as appear proper.

(5) Where—

(a) a person obstructs the exercise of power under subsection (2), and

(b) the obstruction occurs before a notice under section 47E(4) is given in respect of the vehicle concerned,

the Secretary of State may treat section 47E(3)(c) as satisfied in the case concerned.

(6) Where a person obstructs the exercise of power under subsection (2) and the obstruction occurs—

(a) after a notice under section 47E(4) has been given in respect of the vehicle concerned, and

(b) as a result of the operator, or a person who acts on his behalf, behaving in a particular way with the intention of obstructing the exercise of the power,

the Secretary of State may require the operator of the vehicle to pay a penalty.

(7) In this section “inspect” includes test.]]
Sections 47E and 47F: inspection of rail vehicles

(1) Where the Department for Regional Development has reasonable grounds for suspecting that a regulated rail vehicle may not conform with provisions of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which it is required to conform, a person authorised by that Department—

(a) may inspect the vehicle for conformity with the provisions;

(b) for the purpose of exercising his power under paragraph (a)—

(i) may enter premises if he has reasonable grounds for suspecting the vehicle to be at those premises, and

(ii) may enter the vehicle; and

(c) for the purpose of exercising his power under paragraph (a) or (b), may require any person to afford such facilities and assistance with respect to matters under that person's control as are necessary to enable the power to be exercised.

(2) Where the Department for Regional Development has given a notice under section 47E(1) or (4), a person authorised by that Department—

(a) may inspect the vehicle concerned for conformity with the provision specified in the notice;

(b) for the purpose of exercising his power under paragraph (a)—

(i) may enter premises if he has reasonable grounds for suspecting the vehicle to be at those premises, and

(ii) may enter the vehicle; and

(c) for the purpose of exercising his power under paragraph (a) or (b), may require any person to afford such facilities and assistance with respect to matters under that person's control as are necessary to enable the power to be exercised.

(3) A person exercising power under subsection (1) or (2) shall, if required to do so, produce evidence of his authority to exercise the power.

(4) Where a person obstructs the exercise of power under subsection (1), the Department for Regional Development may, for purposes of section 47E(1) or 47F(1), draw such inferences from the obstruction as appear proper.

(5) Where a person—

(a) obstructs the exercise of power under subsection (2), and

(b) the obstruction occurs before a notice under section 47E(4) is given in respect of the vehicle concerned,

the Department for Regional Development may treat section 47E(3)(c) as satisfied in the case concerned.

(6) Where a person obstructs the exercise of power under subsection (2) and the obstruction occurs—

(a) after a notice under section 47E(4) has been given in respect of the vehicle concerned, and

(b) as a result of the operator, or a person who acts on his behalf, behaving in a particular way with the intention of obstructing the exercise of the power,
the Department for Regional Development may require the operator of the vehicle to pay a penalty.

(7) In this section “inspect” includes test.

**Textual Amendments**

F813 Ss. 47D-47H, 47J-47M inserted (N.I.) (prosp.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 10(1)

**PROSPECTIVE**

[^F330] 47H Sections 47E and 47F: supplementary powers E+W+S

[^F335] (1) For the purposes of section 47E, the Secretary of State may give notice to a person requiring the person to supply the Secretary of State, by a time specified in the notice, with a vehicle number or other identifier for a rail vehicle—

(a) of which that person is the operator; and

(b) which is described in the notice.

(2) The time specified in a notice given to a person under subsection (1) may not be earlier than the end of 14 days beginning with the day when the notice is given to the person.

(3) If a person to whom a notice is given under subsection (1) does not comply with the notice by the time specified in the notice, the Secretary of State may require the person to pay a penalty.

(4) Where the Secretary of State has given a notice to a person under section 47E(1) or (4) or 47F(1) or (4), the Secretary of State may request that person to supply the Secretary of State, by a time specified in the request, with a statement detailing the steps taken in response to the notice.

(5) The time specified in a request under subsection (4) must—

(a) if the request relates to a notice under section 47E(1) or 47F(1), be no earlier than the improvement deadline; and

(b) if the request relates to a notice under section 47E(4) or 47F(4), be no earlier than the final deadline.

(6) Where a request under subsection (4)—

(a) relates to a notice under section 47E(1) or 47F(1), and

(b) is not complied with by the time specified in the request, the Secretary of State may treat section 47E(3)(c) or (as the case may be) section 47F(3)(c) as being satisfied in the case concerned.]

**Extent Information**

E97 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 47H exists for Northern Ireland only.
Textual Amendments

F330  Ss. 47D-47M inserted (E.W.S.) (prosp.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. {8(1)}, 20(3)-(6)

F335  Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F813 47H Sections 47E and 47F: supplementary powers  N.I.

(1) For the purposes of section 47E, the Department for Regional Development may give notice to a person requiring the person to supply the Department for Regional Development, by a time specified in the notice, with a vehicle number or other identifier for a rail vehicle—
   (a) of which that person is the operator; and
   (b) which is described in the notice.

(2) The time specified in a notice given to a person under subsection (1) may not be earlier than the end of 14 days beginning with the day when the notice is given to the person.

(3) If a person to whom a notice is given under subsection (1) does not comply with the notice by the time specified in the notice, the Department for Regional Development may require the person to pay a penalty.

(4) Where the Department for Regional Development has given a notice to a person under section 47E(1) or (4) or 47F(1) or (4), that Department may request that person to supply that Department, by a time specified in the request, with a statement detailing the steps taken in response to the notice.

(5) The time specified in a request under subsection (4) must—
   (a) if the request relates to a notice under section 47E(1) or 47F(1), be no earlier than the improvement deadline; and
   (b) if the request relates to a notice under section 47E(4) or 47F(4), be no earlier than the final deadline.

(6) Where a request under subsection (4)—
   (a) relates to a notice under section 47E(1) or 47F(1), and
   (b) is not complied with by the time specified in the request, the Department for Regional Development may treat section 47E(3)(c) or (as the case may be) section 47F(3)(c) as being satisfied in the case concerned.]
Penalties under sections 47D to 47H: amount, due date and recovery

(1) In this section “penalty” means a penalty under any of sections 47D to 47H.

(2) The amount of a penalty—
   (a) must not exceed the maximum prescribed for the purposes of this subsection; and
   (b) must not exceed 10 per cent of the turnover of the person on whom it is imposed.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(b), a person’s turnover shall be determined in accordance with regulations.

(4) A penalty must be paid to the Secretary of State before the end of the prescribed period.

(5) Any sum payable to the Secretary of State as a penalty may be recovered by the Secretary of State as a debt due to him.

(6) In proceedings under subsection (5) for enforcement of a penalty, no question may be raised as to—
   (a) liability to the imposition of the penalty; or
   (b) its amount.

(7) Any sum paid to the Secretary of State as a penalty shall be paid by him into the Consolidated Fund.

(8) The Secretary of State shall issue a code of practice specifying matters to be considered in determining the amount of a penalty.

(9) The Secretary of State may from time to time revise the whole or any part of the code and issue the code as revised.

(10) Before issuing the first or a revised version of the code, the Secretary of State shall lay a draft of that version before Parliament.

(11) After laying the draft of a version of the code before Parliament, the Secretary of State may bring that version of the code into operation by order.

(12) The Secretary of State shall have regard to the code (in addition to any other matters he thinks relevant)—
   (a) when imposing a penalty; and
   (b) when considering under section 47K(6) a notice of objection under section 47K(4).]]
**Textual Amendments**

**F330**  
Ss. 47D-47M inserted (E.W.S.) (prosp.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. {8(1)}, 20(3)-(6)

**F336**  
Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

---

**47J Penalties under sections 47D to 47H: amount, due date and recovery**

N.I.

(1) In this section “penalty” means a penalty under any of sections 47D to 47H.

(2) The amount of a penalty—
   (a) must not exceed the maximum prescribed for the purposes of this subsection; and
   (b) must not exceed 10 per cent of the turnover of the person on whom it is imposed.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(b), a person's turnover shall be determined in accordance with regulations.

(4) A penalty must be paid to the Department for Regional Development before the end of the prescribed period.

(5) Any sum payable to the Department for Regional Development as a penalty may be recovered by that Department as a debt due to it.

(6) In proceedings under subsection (5) for enforcement of a penalty, no question may be raised as to—
   (a) liability to the imposition of the penalty; or
   (b) its amount.

(7) Any sum paid to the Department for Regional Development as a penalty shall be paid by it into the Consolidated Fund.

(8) The Department for Regional Development shall issue a code of practice specifying matters to be considered in determining the amount of a penalty.

(9) The Department for Regional Development may from time to time revise the whole or any part of the code and issue the code as revised.

(10) Before issuing the first or a revised version of the code, the Department for Regional Development shall lay a draft of that version before the Assembly.

(11) After laying the draft of a version of the code before the Assembly, the Department for Regional Development may bring that version of the code into operation by order.

(12) The Department for Regional Development shall have regard to the code (in addition to any other matters it thinks relevant)—
   (a) when imposing a penalty; and
   (b) when considering under section 47K(6) a notice of objection under section 47K(4).}
47K Penalties under sections 47D to 47H: procedure

(1) In this section “penalty” means a penalty under any of sections 47D to 47H.

(2) If the Secretary of State decides that a person is liable to a penalty, the Secretary of State must notify the person of the decision.

(3) A notification under subsection (2) must—
   (a) state the Secretary of State’s reasons for deciding that the person is liable to the penalty;
   (b) state the amount of the penalty;
   (c) specify the date before which, and the manner in which, the penalty must be paid; and
   (d) include an explanation of the steps that the person may take if he objects to the penalty.

(4) Where a person to whom a notification under subsection (2) is issued objects on the ground that—
   (a) he is not liable to the imposition of a penalty, or
   (b) the amount of the penalty is too high,
   the person may give a notice of objection to the Secretary of State.

(5) A notice of objection must—
   (a) be in writing;
   (b) give the objector’s reasons; and
   (c) be given before the end of the prescribed period.

(6) Where the Secretary of State receives a notice of objection to a penalty in accordance with this section, he shall consider it and—
   (a) cancel the penalty;
   (b) reduce the penalty; or
   (c) determine to do neither of those things.

(7) Where the Secretary of State considers under subsection (6) a notice of objection under subsection (4), he shall—
   (a) inform the objector of his decision before the end of the prescribed period or such longer period as he may agree with the objector; and
   (b) if he reduces the penalty, notify the objector of the reduced amount.
Penalties under sections 47D to 47H: procedure

(1) In this section “penalty” means a penalty under any of sections 47D to 47H.

(2) If the Department for Regional Development decides that a person is liable to a penalty, that Department must notify the person of the decision.

(3) A notification under subsection (2) must—
   (a) state that Department’s reasons for deciding that the person is liable to the penalty;
   (b) state the amount of the penalty;
   (c) specify the date before which, and the manner in which, the penalty must be paid; and
   (d) include an explanation of the steps that the person may take if he objects to the penalty.

(4) Where a person to whom a notification under subsection (2) is issued objects on the ground that—
   (a) he is not liable to the imposition of a penalty, or
   (b) the amount of the penalty is too high,
the person may give a notice of objection to the Department for Regional Development.

(5) A notice of objection must—
   (a) be in writing;
   (b) give the objector’s reasons; and
   (c) be given before the end of the prescribed period.

(6) Where the Department for Regional Development receives a notice of objection to a penalty in accordance with this section, that Department shall consider it and—
   (a) cancel the penalty;
   (b) reduce the penalty; or
   (c) determine to do neither of those things.

(7) Where the Department for Regional Development considers under subsection (6) a notice of objection under subsection (4), it shall—
(a) inform the objector of its decision before the end of the prescribed period or such longer period as it may agree with the objector; and
(b) if it reduces the penalty, notify the objector of the reduced amount.

Textual Amendments

F813 Ss. 47D-47H, 47J-47M inserted (N.I.) (prosp.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 10(1)

PROSPECTIVE

[F338 47L Penalties under sections 47D to 47H: appeals E+W+S]

[F338 (1) A person may appeal to the court against a penalty imposed on him under any of sections 47D to 47H on the ground that—
   (a) he is not liable to the imposition of a penalty; or
   (b) the amount of the penalty is too high.

(2) On an appeal under this section, the court may—
   (a) allow the appeal and cancel the penalty;
   (b) allow the appeal and reduce the penalty; or
   (c) dismiss the appeal.

(3) An appeal under this section shall be a re-hearing of the Secretary of State’s decision to impose a penalty, and shall be determined having regard to—
   (a) any code of practice under section 47J which has effect at the time of the appeal; and
   (b) any other matters which the court thinks relevant (which may include matters of which the Secretary of State was unaware).

(4) An appeal may be brought by a person under this section against a penalty whether or not—
   (a) he has given notice of objection under section 47K(4); or
   (b) the penalty has been reduced under section 47K(6).

(5) A reference in this section to “the court” is a reference—
   (a) in England and Wales, to a county court; and
   (b) in Scotland, to the sheriff.

(6) The sheriff may transfer proceedings under this section to the Court of Session.

(7) Where the sheriff has made a determination under subsection (2), any party to the proceedings may appeal on a point of law, either to the Sheriff Principal or to the Court of Session, against that determination.]

Extent Information

E100 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 47L exists for Northern Ireland only.
Textual Amendments
F330 Ss. 47D-47M inserted (E.W.S.) (prosp.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. {8(1), 20(3)-(6)}
F338 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(h) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)

[S. 47L. Penalties under sections 47D to 47H: appeals]

(1) A person may appeal to the county court against a penalty imposed on him under any of sections 47D to 47H on the ground that—
   (a) he is not liable to the imposition of a penalty; or
   (b) the amount of the penalty is too high.

(2) On an appeal under this section, the county court may—
   (a) allow the appeal and cancel the penalty;
   (b) allow the appeal and reduce the penalty; or
   (c) dismiss the appeal.

(3) An appeal under this section shall be a re-hearing of the decision of the Department for Regional Development to impose a penalty, and shall be determined having regard to—
   (a) any code of practice under section 47J which has effect at the time of the appeal; and
   (b) any other matters which the county court thinks relevant (which may include matters of which the Department for Regional Development was unaware).

(4) An appeal may be brought by a person under this section against a penalty whether or not—
   (a) he has given notice of objection under section 47K(4); or
   (b) the penalty has been reduced under section 47K(6).

Textual Amendments
F813 Ss. 47D-47H, 47J-47M inserted (N.I.) (prosp.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 10(1)

[S. 47M. Sections 46 to 47H: interpretation]

(1) In sections 46 to 47H “operator”, in relation to any rail vehicle, means the person having the management of that vehicle.

(2) For the purposes of those sections, a person uses a vehicle for carriage if he uses it for the carriage of passengers.
(3) Where an exemption order under section 47 authorises use of a rail vehicle even though the vehicle does not conform with a provision of rail vehicle accessibility regulations, references in sections 47A to 47G to provisions of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which the vehicle is required to conform do not, in the vehicle’s case, include that provision.]

Extent Information

E101 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 47M exists for Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments

F330 Ss. 47D-47M inserted (E.W.S.) (prosp.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. {8(1)}, 20(3)-(6)

F339 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

N.I. Sections 46 to 47H: interpretation

(1) In sections 46 to 47H “operator”, in relation to any rail vehicle, means the person having the management of that vehicle.

(2) For the purposes of those sections, a person uses a vehicle for carriage if he uses it for the carriage of passengers.

(3) Where an exemption order under section 47 authorises use of a rail vehicle even though the vehicle does not conform with a provision of rail vehicle accessibility regulations, references in sections 47A to 47G to provisions of rail vehicle accessibility regulations with which the vehicle is required to conform do not, in the vehicle’s case, include that provision.]

Textual Amendments

F813 Ss. 47D-47H, 47I-47M inserted (N.I.) (prosp.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 10(1)

Supplemental

48 Offences by bodies corporate etc.

(1) Where an offence under section 40 or 46 committed by a body corporate is committed with the consent or connivance of, or is attributable to any neglect on the part of, a director, manager, secretary or other similar officer of the body, or a person purporting to act in such a capacity, he as well as the body corporate is guilty of the offence.
(2) In subsection (1) “director”, in relation to a body corporate whose affairs are managed by its members, means a member of the body corporate.

(3) \[F342\] .......................... [\]

**Extent Information**

E102 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only. It incorporates the modifications for N.I. set out in Sch. 8 para. 32; see s. 70(6)

**Textual Amendments**

F340 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(1)

F341 Words in s. 48(1) repealed (E.W.S.) (22.2.2010 for certain purposes, otherwise 6.4.2010) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(2), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 2; S.I. 2010/341, art. 2(1)(e)(2)(c)

F342 S. 48(3) omitted (N.I.) by virtue of Sch. 8 para. 32 of this Act, see s. 70(6)

**Commencement Information**

I23 S. 48 fully in force at 21.1.2003; s. 48 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3)(6), Sch. 8 para. 48(1); s. 48 in force for certain purposes (E.W.S.) at 13.5.1998 by S.I. 1998/1282, art. 2; s. 48 in force for certain purposes (N.I.) at 13.5.1998 by S.R. 1998/183, art. 2; s. 48 in force (E.W.S.) at 30.8.2000 to the extent not previously in force by S.I. 2000/1969, art. 2; s. 48 in force (N.I.) at 21.1.2003 to the extent not previously in force by S.R. 2003/24, art. 2

49 Forgery and false statements.

\[F343\](1) In this section “relevant document” means—

(a) a certificate of exemption issued under section \[F344\] section 36, 37 or 37A;  
(b) a notice of a kind mentioned in \[F345\] section 36(9)(b), 37(8)(b) or 37A(8)(b);  
(c) an accessibility certificate; or  
(d) an approval certificate.

(2) A person is guilty of an offence if, with intent to deceive, he—

(a) forges, alters or uses a relevant document;  
(b) lends a relevant document to any other person;  
(c) allows a relevant document to be used by any other person; or  
(d) makes or has in his possession any document which closely resembles a relevant document.

(3) A person who is guilty of an offence under subsection (2) is liable—

(a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;  
(b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to a fine or to both.

(4) A person who knowingly makes a false statement for the purpose of obtaining an accessibility certificate or an approval certificate is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.]
Part 5A – Public authorities

Chapter 3 – SUPPLEMENTARY

Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

Part 5A – Public authorities

Chapter 3 – SUPPLEMENTARY

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Extent Information

E103 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only.

Textual Amendments

F343 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F344 Words in s. 49(1)(a) substituted (31.12.2003 for certain purposes and otherwise 31.3.2004 as respects private hire vehicles licensed in England and Wales, 1.1.2008 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.6.2008 as respects a private hire vehicle licensed by the Department of the Environment in Northern Ireland) by Private Hire Vehicles (Carriage of Guide Dogs etc.) Act 2002 (c. 37), ss. 4(2), 6(2); S.I. 2003/3123, art. 2; S.I. 2007/3477, art. 2

F345 Words in s. 49(1)(b) substituted (31.12.2003 for certain purposes and otherwise 31.3.2004 as respects private hire vehicles licensed in England and Wales, 1.1.2008 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.6.2008 as respects a private hire vehicle licensed by the Department of the Environment in Northern Ireland) by Private Hire Vehicles (Carriage of Guide Dogs etc.) Act 2002 (c. 37), ss. 4(3), 6(2); S.I. 2003/3123, art. 2; S.I. 2007/3477, art. 2

Commencement Information

I24 S. 49 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(2)(3); s. 49 in force for E.W.S. for certain purposes at 6.4.2005 by S.I. 2005/1122, art. 2; s. 49 in force for N.I. for certain purposes at 3.6.2008 by S.R. 2008/236, art. 2

F346 F347 PART 5A

PUBLIC AUTHORITIES

Textual Amendments

F346 Pt. VA (ss. 49A, 49B) inserted (N.I.) (1.1.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 5; S.R. 2006/470, art. 2

F347 Pt. 5A (ss. 49A-49F) inserted (E.W.S) (30.6.2005 for s. 49D for certain purposes, 5.12.2005 for s. 49A(1) for certain purposes, and 49B-49F so far as not already in force, and otherwise 4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 3, 20(3)-(6); S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(2)(b); S.I. 2005/2774, arts. 3(b), 4(a) [Editorial note: The E.W.S versions of ss. 49C-49F were inserted along with the Part heading "Pt. 5A Public authorities" and should appear under that heading]

F347 49A  General duty E+W+S

F348

Extent Information

E104 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 49A exists for Northern Ireland only.
Textual Amendments
F348 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Section 49A General duty N.I.

(1) Every public authority shall in carrying out its functions have due regard to—
   (a) the need to promote positive attitudes towards disabled persons; and
   (b) the need to encourage participation by disabled persons in public life.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply to—
   (a) the functions of the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland
       relating to the prosecution of offences; or
   (b) any act of a description prescribed by regulations.

(3) Subsection (1) is without prejudice to any obligation of a public authority to comply
    with any other statutory provision (including any other provision of this Act).

(4) The Commission shall—
   (a) keep under review the effectiveness of the duty imposed by this section;
   (b) offer advice to public authorities and others in connection with that duty.

(5) Not later than 3 years after the appointed day, the Commission shall prepare and
    publish a report on the effectiveness of the duty imposed by this section.

(6) In this section—
   “the appointed day” means the day appointed under Article 1(2) of the
   Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 for the coming into
   operation of Article 5 of that Order;
   “the Commission” means the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland;
   “public authority” has the same meaning as in section 75 of the Northern
   Ireland Act 1998 (c. 47).]

Section 49B Meaning of “public authority” in Part 5A E+W+S

F349 ..................
Plan as to duty under section 49A N.I.

(1) A public authority to which this subsection applies shall prepare and submit to the Commission a plan showing how the public authority proposes to fulfil the duty imposed by section 49A in relation to the relevant functions.

(2) Any other public authority shall prepare and submit to the Commission such a plan if requested to do so by the Commission.

(3) A public authority—
   (a) may at any time revise its plan and submit the revised plan to the Commission;
   (b) shall, if requested to do so by the Commission, revise its plan and submit the revised plan to the Commission.

(4) A plan (or revised plan) shall—
   (a) conform to any guidelines as to form or content which are issued by the Commission with the approval of the Office;
   (b) specify a timetable for measures proposed in the plan;
   (c) include details of how it will be published.

(5) Subsection (1) applies to any public authority except one which is notified in writing by the Commission that that subsection does not apply to it.

(6) If a public authority—
   (a) fails to submit a plan under subsection (1) before the end of the period of 6 months beginning with the appointed day or, if later, the establishment of the authority,
   (b) fails to submit a plan under subsection (2) before the end of the period of 6 months beginning with the date of the request under that subsection,
   (c) fails to submit a revised plan under subsection (3)(b) before the end of the period of 3 months beginning with the date of the request under that paragraph, or
   (d) submits to the Commission under paragraph (3)(a) or (b) a revised plan which in the opinion of the Commission fails to comply with subsection (4),

the Commission shall lay before the Assembly a report of that failure containing such comments and other material as appear to the Commission to be appropriate to bring to the attention of the Assembly.

(7) A public authority—
   (a) shall review its current plan under this section—
      (i) in the case of an authority in relation to which there is a scheme under Schedule 9 to the Northern Ireland Act 1998, at the same time as the authority reviews its current scheme under paragraph 8(3) of that Schedule;
      (ii) in the case of any other authority, at such times as the Commission may request; and
   (b) inform the Commission of the outcome of the review.

(8) In this section—
   “the appointed day”, “the Commission” and “public authority” have the same meanings as in section 49A;
“the relevant functions” means the functions of the public authority or, in the case of a plan submitted in response to a request which specifies particular functions of the public authority, those functions.]

**PART 5B**

**IMPROVEMENTS TO DWELLING HOUSES**

**Textual Amendments**

- **F350** Pt. VB (ss. 49C, 49D) inserted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 16(1); S.R. 2006/466, art. 2(2)(j)
- **F351** Pt. 5B (ss. 49G, 49H) inserted (E.W.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 16(1), 20(3)-(6), S.I 2005/2774, [art. 4(d)]

**Extent Information**

- **E106** This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 49C exists for Northern Ireland only.

**Textual Amendments**

- **F347** Pt. 5A (ss. 49A-49F) inserted (E.W.S) (30.6.2005 for s. 49D for certain purposes, 5.12.2005 for s. 49A(1) for certain purposes, and 49B-49F so far as not already in force, and otherwise 4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 3, 20(3)-(6); S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(2)(b); S.I. 2005/2774, arts. 3(b), 4(a) [Editorial note: The E.W.S versions of ss. 49C-49F were inserted along with the Part heading "Pt. 5A Public authorities" and should appear under that heading]
- **F352** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

**F350 49C Improvements to let dwelling houses N.I.**

(1) This section applies in relation to a lease of a dwelling house if—

(a) the tenancy is not a secure tenancy or a regulated tenancy;

(b) the tenant or any other person who lawfully occupies or is intended lawfully to occupy the premises is a disabled person;

(c) the person mentioned in paragraph (b) occupies or is intended to occupy the premises as his only or principal home;

(d) the tenant is entitled under the lease to make improvements to the premises with the consent of the landlord; and

(e) the tenant applies to the landlord for his consent to make a relevant improvement.
(2) If the consent of the landlord is unreasonably withheld it must be taken to have been given.

(3) Where the tenant applies in writing for the consent—
   (a) if the landlord refuses to give consent, he must give the tenant a written statement of the reason why the consent was withheld;
   (b) if the landlord neither gives nor refuses to give consent within a reasonable time, consent must be taken to have been withheld.

(4) If the landlord gives consent to the making of an improvement subject to a condition which is unreasonable, the consent must be taken to have been unreasonably withheld.

(5) In any question as to whether—
   (a) the consent of the landlord was unreasonably withheld, or
   (b) a condition imposed by the landlord is unreasonable,
   it is for the landlord to show that it was not.

(6) If the tenant fails to comply with a reasonable condition imposed by the landlord on the making of a relevant improvement, the failure is to be treated as a breach by the tenant of an obligation of his tenancy.

(7) An improvement to premises is a relevant improvement if, having regard to the disability which the disabled person mentioned in subsection (1)(b) has, it is likely to facilitate his enjoyment of the premises.

(8) Subsections (2) to (6) apply to a lease only to the extent that provision of a like nature is not made by the lease.

(9) In this section—

   “improvement” means any alteration in or addition to premises and includes—
   (a) any addition to or alteration in landlord's fittings and fixtures,
   (b) any addition or alteration connected with the provision of services to the premises,
   (c) the erection of a wireless or television aerial, and
   (d) the carrying out of external decoration;

   “lease” includes a sub-lease or other tenancy, and “landlord” and “tenant” must be construed accordingly;

   “regulated tenancy” has the same meaning as in the Rent (Northern Ireland) Order 1978 (NI 20);

   “secure tenancy” has the meaning given by Article 25 of the Housing (Northern Ireland) Order 1983 (NI 15).]
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part 5B – Improvements to dwelling houses
Chapter 3 – SUPPLEMENTARY

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F347 Pt. 5A (ss. 49A-49F) inserted (E.W.S) (30.6.2005 for s. 49D for certain purposes, 5.12.2005 for s. 49A(1) for certain purposes, and 49B-49F so far as not already in force, and otherwise 4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 3, 20(3)-(6); S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(2)(b); S.I. 2005/2774, arts. 3(b), 4(a) [Editorial note: The E.W.S versions of ss. 49C-49F were inserted along with the Part heading "Pt. 5A Public authorities" and should appear under that heading]

F353 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F350 49D Conciliation of disputes  N.I.

(1) The Equality Commission for Northern Ireland may make arrangements with any other person for the provision of conciliation services by, or by persons appointed by, that person in relation to a dispute of any description concerning the question whether it is unreasonable for a landlord to withhold consent to the making of a relevant improvement to a dwelling house.

(2) Subsections (2) to (8) of section 28 apply for the purposes of this section as they apply for the purposes of that section and for that purpose a reference in that section to—
   (a) a dispute arising under Part III must be construed as a reference to a dispute mentioned in subsection (1);
   (b) arrangements under that section must be construed as a reference to arrangements under this section.

(3) “Relevant improvement” has the same meaning as in section 49C.]

49E Duties under section 49D: compliance notices

F354 .................................................................................................................................

Textual Amendments

F347 Pt. 5A (ss. 49A-49F) inserted (E.W.S) (30.6.2005 for s. 49D for certain purposes, 5.12.2005 for s. 49A(1) for certain purposes, and 49B-49F so far as not already in force, and otherwise 4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 3, 20(3)-(6); S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(2)(b); S.I. 2005/2774, arts. 3(b), 4(a) [Editorial note: The E.W.S versions of ss. 49C-49F were inserted along with the Part heading "Pt. 5A Public authorities" and should appear under that heading]

F354 S. 49E repealed (1.10.2007) by Equality Act 2006 (c. 3), ss. 40, 91, 93, Sch. 3 para. 49, Sch. 4 (with s. 92); S.I. 2007/2603, art. 2(d) (subject to art. 3)

49F Enforcement of compliance notices

F355 .................................................................................................................................

Textual Amendments

F347 Pt. 5A (ss. 49A-49F) inserted (E.W.S) (30.6.2005 for s. 49D for certain purposes, 5.12.2005 for s. 49A(1) for certain purposes, and 49B-49F so far as not already in force, and otherwise 4.12.2006)
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

Part VI – The National Disability Council

Chapter 3 – SUPPLEMENTARY

165

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 3, 20(3)-(6); S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(2)(b); S.I. 2005/2774, arts. 3(b), 4(a) [Editorial note: The E.W.S versions of ss. 49C-49F were inserted along with the Part heading “Pt. 5A Public authorities” and should appear under that heading]

F355 S. 49F repealed (1.10.2007) by Equality Act 2006 (c. 3), ss. 40, 91, 93, Sch. 3 para. 49, Sch. 4 (with s. 92); S.I. 2007/2603, art. 2(d) (subject to art. 3)

49G Improvements to let dwelling houses

F356

Textual Amendments

F356 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(h)

49H Conciliation of disputes

F357

Textual Amendments

F357 S. 49H repealed (1.10.2007) by Equality Act 2006 (c. 3), ss. 40, 91, 93, Sch. 3 para. 50, Sch. 4 (with s. 92); S.I. 2007/2603, art. 2 (subject to art. 3)

49I Conciliation of disputes: rented housing in Scotland

F358

Textual Amendments

F358 S. 49I inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Equality Act 2006 (c. 3), ss. 43(1), 93 (with s. 92); S.I. 2006/1082, art. 3

F359 S. 49I repealed (1.10.2007) by Equality Act 2006 (c. 3), ss. 40, 91, 93, Sch. 3 para. 51, Sch. 4 (with s. 92); S.I. 2007/2603, art. 2 (subject to art. 3)

PART VI

THE NATIONAL DISABILITY COUNCIL

F360S361

Textual Amendments

F360 S. 50 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2, Appendix
Codes of practice prepared by the Council.

(1) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

(2) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

(3) A failure on the part of any person to observe any provision of a code does not of itself make that person liable to any proceedings.

(4) A code is admissible in evidence in any proceedings under this Act before an industrial tribunal, \[F364\] or a county court.

(5) If any provision of a code appears to a tribunal or court to be relevant to any question arising in any proceedings under this Act, it shall be taken into account in determining that question.

(6) In this section and section 52 “code” means a code issued by [F365\] a Northern Ireland department under this section and includes a code which has been altered and re-issued.\]
Part VII – SUPPLEMENTARY

53A Codes of practice.

The Commission may prepare and issue codes of practice giving practical guidance on how to avoid acts which are unlawful under Part II or III of this Act or Part III of the 2005 Order, or on any other matter relating to the operation of any provision of Part II or III of this Act or Part III of the 2005 Order, to—

(a) employers;
(b) service providers;
(c) public authorities within the meaning given by section 21B;
(d) bodies which are responsible bodies for the purposes of Chapter I or II of Part III of the 2005 Order; or
(e) other persons to whom the provisions of Part II or III of this Act or Part III of the 2005 Order apply.

The Commission may also prepare and issue codes of practice giving practical guidance to any persons on any other matter with a view to—
(a) promoting the equalisation of opportunities for disabled persons and persons who have had a disability; or

(b) encouraging good practice in the way such persons are treated, in any field of activity regulated by any provision of Part II or III of this Act or Part III of the 2005 Order.

(1B) Neither subsection (1) nor (1A) applies in relation to any duty imposed by or under Article 17 or 18 of the 2005 Order.

(1C) The Commission may prepare and issue codes of practice giving practical guidance to persons subject to duties under section 49A on how to perform those duties.

(1D) The Commission may prepare and issue codes of practice giving practical guidance to landlords and tenants as to—

(a) circumstances in which a tenant requires the consent of his landlord for making a relevant improvement to a dwelling house;
(b) circumstances in which it is unreasonable to withhold such consent;
(c) the application of the improvement provisions in relation to relevant improvements to dwelling houses.

(1E) In subsection (1D) the improvement provisions are—

(a) Article 42(c) of the Rent (Northern Ireland) Order 1978 (NI 20);
(b) Article 34 of the Housing (Northern Ireland) Order 1983 (NI 15);
(c) Article 49C.

(2) The Commission shall, when requested to do so by the Office, prepare a code of practice dealing with the matters specified in the request.

(3) In preparing a code of practice the Commission shall carry out such consultations as it considers appropriate (which shall include the publication for public consultation of proposals relating to the code).

(4) The Commission may not issue a code of practice unless—

(a) a draft of it has been submitted to and approved by the Office and laid by the Office before the Assembly; and
(b) the statutory period has elapsed without the Assembly resolving not to approve the draft.

(5) If the Office does not approve a draft code of practice submitted to it the Office shall give the Commission a written statement of its reasons.

(6) A code of practice issued by the Commission—

(a) shall come into effect on such day as the Office may by order appoint;
(b) may be revised in whole or part, and re-issued, by the Commission; and
(c) may be revoked by an order made by the Office at the request of the Commission.

(7) Where the Commission proposes to revise a code of practice—

(a) it shall comply with subsection (3) in relation to the revisions; and
(b) the other provisions of this section apply to the revised code of practice as they apply to a new code of practice.

(8) Failure to observe any provision of a code of practice does not of itself make a person liable to any proceedings, but any provision of a code which appears to a court or
tribunal to be relevant to any question arising in any proceedings under Part II [\(F374\), III or VA], or any proceedings relating to a relevant improvement, [\(F375\) or Part III of the 2005 Order] shall be taken into account in determining that question.

(9) In this section—

“code of practice” means a code of practice under this section;

“the Commission” means the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland;

“the Office” means the Office of the First Minister and deputy First Minister; and

“relevant improvement” means an improvement (within the meaning of section 49C(9)) to premises which, having regard to the disability which a disabled person who lawfully occupies or is intended lawfully the premises has, is likely to facilitate his enjoyment of the premises.]

“statutory period” has the meaning assigned to it by section 41(2) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954.

Subject to subsection (12), in relation to a code of practice giving practical guidance wholly or mainly as to—

(a) any matter relating to the operation of any provision of Chapter I or III of Part III of the 2005 Order; or

(b) any field of activity regulated by any such provision, any reference in this section to the Office shall be read as a reference to the Department of Education.

(10) Subject to subsection (12), in relation to a code of practice giving practical guidance wholly or mainly as to—

(a) any matter relating to the operation of any provision of Chapter II of Part III of the 2005 Order; or

(b) any field of activity regulated by any such provision, any reference in this section to the Office shall be read as a reference to the Department for the Economy.

(11) Subject to subsection (12), in relation to a code of practice giving practical guidance wholly or mainly as to—

(a) any matter relating to the operation of any provision of Chapter II of Part III of the 2005 Order; or

(b) any field of activity regulated by any such provision, any reference in this section to the Office shall be read as a reference to the Department of Education and the Department for the Economy, acting jointly.]

Subordinate Legislation Made

| P1 | S. 54A(6)(a): exercise of power - 30.1.2006 appointed by {S.R. 2006/16}, art. 2; {S.R. 2006/17}, art. 2

Textual Amendments


| F370 | S. 54A(1)-(1B) substituted (6.4.2005) for s. 54A(1) by The Special Educational Needs and Disability (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1117 (N.I. 6)), arts. 1, 41(2) (with art. 47)

| F371 | S. 54A(1)(ba)(bb) inserted (3.7.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 22(2); S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(b)

| F372 | S. 54A(1C) inserted (3.7.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 22(3); S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(b)
F373  S. 54A(1D)(1E) inserted (3.7.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 16(2); S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(a)

F374  Words in s. 54A(8) substituted for "or Part III" (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 22(4); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(m)

F375  Words in s. 54A(8) inserted (6.4.2005) by The Special Educational Needs and Disability (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1117 (N.I. 6)), arts. 1, 41(3) (with art. 47)


F377  S. 54A(9): definition of "relevant improvement" inserted (3.7.2006) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 22(5); S.R. 2006/289, art. 2(1)(b)

F378  S. 54A(10)-(12) added (6.4.2005) by The Special Educational Needs and Disability (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1117 (N.I. 6)), arts. 1, 41(4) (with art. 47)

F379  Words in s. 54A(11)(12) substituted (8.5.2016) by The Departments (Transfer of Functions) Order (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2016/76), art. 1(2), Sch. 6 para. 46 (with art. 9)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C40  S. 54A: power to extend conferred (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), art. 11(2) (with arts. 11(3), 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

F380  53 Codes of practice prepared by the Secretary of State.

F381  (1) ..........................................................

F382  (2) ..........................................................

F383  (3) ..........................................................

(4) A failure on the part of any person to observe any provision of a code does not of itself make that person liable to any proceedings.

(5) A code is admissible in evidence in any proceedings under this Act before an industrial tribunal, [F382] or a county court.

(6) If any provision of a code appears to a tribunal or court to be relevant to any question arising in any proceedings under this Act, it shall be taken into account in determining that question.

(7) In this section and section 54 “code” means a code issued by the [F383] Department of Economic Development under this section and includes a code which has been revised and re-issued.

F384  (8) ..........................................................

F385  (9) ..........................................................

Extent Information

E110  This section now extends to N.I. only. Prior to the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, different versions of this section had been created for N.I. and E.W.S. respectively to reflect the different amendment history for each jurisdiction. This version is based on the N.I. version as it stood at the date of the 2010 repeal. It incorporates the N.I. modifications set out in Sch. 8 para. 36(1)(3).
It does not reflect the history of E.W.S. effects prior to the 2010 repeal, which can be found in earlier versions.

Textual Amendments

F380  S. 53 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000 in relation to s. 53(1)-(3)(8)(9) and otherwise prosp.) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch. Appendix

F381  Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(h) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F382  Words in s. 53(5) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 36 of this Act

F383  Words in s. 53(7) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 36(1) of this Act

Commencement Information

I27  S. 53 wholly in force 11.7.1996; s. 53 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); s. 53 in force (N.I.) at 11.7.1996 by S.R. 1996/280, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. I

Further provision about codes issued under section 53.

F384  (1) ........................................

F384  (2) ........................................

F384  (3) ........................................

F384  (4) ........................................

F384  (5) ........................................

F384  (6) ........................................

F384  (7) ........................................

F384  (8) ........................................

F384  (9) ........................................

Extant Information

E111  In its application to Northern Ireland, this section has effect as substituted by Sch. 8 para. 37 of this Act; see s. 70(6)

Textual Amendments

F384  S. 54 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000 in relation to s. 54(1) to (7) and (9) otherwise 4.12.2006) by Disability Rights Commission Act 1999 (c. 17), ss. 14(2), 16(2), Sch. 5 (with ss. 9(2), 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, (Sch. 2 Appendix); S.I. 2006/3189, art. 2

F385  S. 54 (as substituted by Sch. 8 para. 37 of this Act) repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000 in relation to s. 54(1)-(7) and (9) (with the exception of the definition of the “Department”) and otherwise prosp.) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch. Appendix

Commencement Information

I28  S. 54 wholly in force at 11.7.1996; s. 54 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); s. 54 in force (E.W.S.) at 6.6.1996 by S.I. 1996/1474, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. I; s. 54 in force (N.I.) at 11.7.1996 by S.R. 1996/280, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. I
172

55

Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part VII – Supplemental
Chapter 3 – SUPPLEMENTARY
Document Generated: 2020-03-13
Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for
the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Victimisation.

[F386(1) or the purposes of Part II or Part III [F387(other than sections 24A to 24L)], a person
(“A”) discriminates against another person (“B”) if—
(a) he treats B less favourably than he treats or would treat other persons whose
circumstances are the same as B’s; and
(b) he does so for a reason mentioned in subsection (2).
(2) The reasons are that—
(a) B has—
(i) brought proceedings against A or any other person under this Act
[F388or Part III of the 2005 Order] ; or
(ii) given evidence or information in connection with such proceedings
brought by any person; or
(iii) otherwise done anything under [F389, or by reference to,] this Act
[F388or Part III of the 2005 Order] in relation to A or any other person;
or
(iv) alleged that A or any other person has (whether or not the allegation
so states) contravened this Act [F388or Part III of the 2005 Order] ; or
(b) A believes or suspects that B has done or intends to do any of those things.
(3) Where B is a disabled person, or a person who has had a disability, the disability in
question shall be disregarded in comparing his circumstances with those of any other
person for the purposes of subsection (1)(a).
[F390(3A) For the purposes of Chapter I of Part III of the 2005 Order—
(a) references in subsection (2) to B include references to—
(i) a person who is, for the purposes of that Chapter, B's parent; and
(ii) a sibling of B; and
(b) references in that subsection to this Act or Part III of the 2005 Order are, as
respects a person mentioned in sub-paragraph (i) or (ii) of paragraph (a), to
be read as references to that Chapter.]
(4) Subsection (1) does not apply to treatment of a person because of an allegation made
by him if the allegation was false and not made in good faith.
[F391(5) In the case of an act which constitutes discrimination by virtue of this section, sections
4, 4B, 4D, 4G, 6A, 7A, 13, 14A, 14C [F392, 15B] and 16A also apply to discrimination
against a person who is not disabled.
(6) F393. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .]]
Extent Information

E112 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to
N.I. only. Prior to that repeal, different versions of this section had been created for N.I. and E.W.S.
respectively to reflect the different amendment history for each jurisdiction. This version is based on
the N.I. version as it stood at the date of the repeal. It does not reflect the history of E.W.S. effects
prior to the 2010 repeal, which can be found in earlier versions.


Help for aggrieved persons in obtaining information etc.

(1) For the purposes of this section—

(a) a person who considers that he may have been—

(i) discriminated against in contravention of Part II or III, or

(ii) subjected to harassment in contravention of Part II or section 21A(2),

is referred to as “the person aggrieved”; and

(b) a person against whom the person aggrieved may decide to institute, or has instituted, proceedings in respect of such discrimination or harassment is referred to as “the respondent”.

(2) With a view to helping the person aggrieved decide whether to institute proceedings and, if he does so, to formulate and present his case in the most effective manner, the Office shall by order prescribe—

(a) forms by which the person aggrieved may question the respondent on his reasons for doing any relevant act, or on any other matter which is or may be relevant; and

(b) forms by which the respondent may if he so wishes reply to any questions.

(3) Where the person aggrieved questions the respondent in accordance with forms prescribed by an order under subsection (2)—
(a) the question, and any reply by the respondent (whether in accordance with such an order or not), shall be admissible as evidence in any proceedings under Part II or III;

(b) if it appears to the court or tribunal in any such proceedings—

(i) that the respondent deliberately, and without reasonable excuse, omitted to reply within the period of eight weeks beginning with the day on which the question was served on him, or

(ii) that the respondent's reply is evasive or equivocal,

it may draw any inference which it considers it just and equitable to draw, including an inference that the respondent committed an unlawful act.

(4) The Office may by order—

(a) prescribe the period within which questions must be duly served in order to be admissible under subsection (3)(a); and

(b) prescribe the manner in which a question, and any reply by the respondent, may be duly served.

(5) County court rules may enable a court entertaining a claim under section 25 to determine, before the date fixed for the hearing of the claim, whether a question or reply is admissible under this section or not.

(6) In proceedings in respect of a section 21B claim, subsection (3)(b) does not apply in relation to a failure to reply, or a particular reply, if the following conditions are met—

(a) that at the time of doing any relevant act, the respondent was carrying out public investigator functions or was a public prosecutor; and

(b) that the respondent reasonably believes that a reply or (as the case may be) a different reply would be likely to prejudice any criminal investigation, any decision to institute criminal proceedings or any criminal proceedings or would reveal the reasons behind a decision not to institute, or a decision not to continue, criminal proceedings.

(7) The Office may by regulations provide for this section not to have effect, or to have effect with prescribed modifications, in relation to section 21B claims of a prescribed description.

(8) This section is without prejudice to any other enactment or rule of law regulating interlocutory and preliminary matters in proceedings before a county court or industrial tribunal, and has effect subject to any enactment or rule of law regulating the admissibility of evidence in such proceedings.

(9) In this section “section 21B claim” means a claim under section 25 by virtue of section 21B.]}

**Extent Information**

E113 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only. Prior to that repeal, different versions of this section had been created for N.I. and E.W.S. respectively to reflect the different amendment history for each jurisdiction. This version is based on the N.I. version as it stood at the date of the repeal. It does not reflect the history of E.W.S. effects prior to the 2010 repeal, which can be found in earlier versions.
57 Aiding unlawful acts.

[F396(1) A person who knowingly aids another person to do an unlawful act made unlawful by this Act is to be treated for the purposes of this Act as himself doing the same kind of unlawful act.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), an employee or agent for whose act the employer or principal is liable under section 58 (or would be so liable but for section 58(5)) shall be taken to have aided the employer or principal to do the act.

(3) For the purposes of this section, a person does not knowingly aid another to do an unlawful act if—

(a) he acts in reliance on a statement made to him by that other person that, because of any provision of this Act, the act would not be unlawful; and

(b) it is reasonable for him to rely on the statement.

(4) A person who knowingly or recklessly makes such a statement which is false or misleading in a material respect is guilty of an offence.

(5) Any person guilty of an offence under subsection (4) shall be liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

[F397(6) “Unlawful act” means an act made unlawful by any provision of this Act other than a provision contained in Chapter 1 of Part 4.]
58 Liability of employers and principals.

(1) Anything done by a person in the course of his employment shall be treated for the purposes of this Act as also done by his employer, whether or not it was done with the employer’s knowledge or approval.

(2) Anything done by a person as agent for another person with the authority of that other person shall be treated for the purposes of this Act as also done by that other person.

(3) Subsection (2) applies whether the authority was—
   (a) express or implied; or
   (b) given before or after the act in question was done.

(4) Subsections (1) and (2) do not apply in relation to an offence under section 57(4).

(5) In proceedings under this Act against any person in respect of an act alleged to have been done by an employee of his, it shall be a defence for that person to prove that he took such steps as were reasonably practicable to prevent the employee from—
   (a) doing that act; or
   (b) doing, in the course of his employment, acts of that description.

59 Statutory authority and national security etc.

(1) Nothing in this Act makes unlawful any act done—
   (a) in pursuance of any enactment; or
   (b) in pursuance of any instrument made under any enactment by—
      (i) a Minister of the Crown,
      (ii) a member of the Scottish Executive,  
      (iii) the National Assembly for Wales  

(iv) the Welsh Ministers, the First Minister for Wales or the Counsel General to the Welsh Assembly Government.

or

c) to comply with any condition or requirement—

(i) imposed by a Minister of the Crown (whether before or after the passing of this Act) by virtue of any enactment,

(ii) imposed by a member of the Scottish Executive (whether before or after the coming into force of this sub-paragraph) by virtue of any enactment, \(^{[F404]}\) . . .

(iii) imposed by the National Assembly for Wales \(^{[F405]}\) constituted by the Government of Wales Act 1998\(^{[F406]}\) [whether before or after the coming into force of this sub-paragraph] by virtue of any enactment or

(iv) imposed by the Welsh Ministers, the First Minister for Wales or the Counsel General to the Welsh Assembly Government.\(^{[F407]}\)]

(2) In subsection (1) “enactment” includes one passed or made after the date on which this Act is passed and “instrument” includes one made after that date.

\(^{[F407]}\) (2A) Nothing in—

(a) Part II, or

(b) Part III to the extent that it relates to the provision of employment services, makes unlawful any act done for the purpose of safeguarding national security if the doing of the act was justified by that purpose.

\(^{[F408]}\) (2A) Nothing in—

(a) Part 2 of this Act, or

(b) Part 3 of this Act to the extent that it relates to the provision of employment services, makes unlawful any act done for the purpose of safeguarding national security if the doing of the act was justified by that purpose.

(3) Nothing in \(^{[F409]}\) any other provision of this Act makes unlawful any act done for the purpose of safeguarding national security.

---

**Extent Information**

E116 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 40; see s. 70(6)

**Textual Amendments**

_F400_ Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

_F401_ S. 59(1)(b)(c) substituted (E.W.S.) (30.6.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 30; S.I. 2005/1676, art. 2(1)(c);

_F402_ Word in s. 59(1)(b)(ii) omitted by virtue of The Government of Wales Act 2006 (Consequential Modifications and Transitional Provisions) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1388), arts. 1, 3, Sch. 1 para. 61(2), the amending provision coming into force immediately after the end of "the initial period" (which
ended with the day of the first appointment of a First Minister on 25.5.2007) - see s. 161(5) of the Government of Wales Act 2006.

F403  **S. 59(1)(b)(iv) and preceding words inserted by The Government of Wales Act 2006 (Consequential Modifications and Transitional Provisions) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1388), arts. 1, 3, Sch. 1 para. 61(3),** the amending provision coming into force immediately after the end of "the initial period" (which ended with the day of the first appointment of a First Minister on 25.5.2007) - see s. 161(5) of the Government of Wales Act 2006.

F404  **Word in s. 59(1)(c)(ii) omitted by virtue of The Government of Wales Act 2006 (Consequential Modifications and Transitional Provisions) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1388), arts. 1, 3, Sch. 1 para. 61(4),** the amending provision coming into force immediately after the end of "the initial period" (which ended with the day of the first appointment of a First Minister on 25.5.2007) - see s. 161(4) of the Government of Wales Act 2006.

F405  **Words in s. 59(1)(c)(iii) inserted by The Government of Wales Act 2006 (Consequential Modifications and Transitional Provisions) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1388), arts. 1, 3, Sch. 1 para. 61(5),** the amending provision coming into force immediately after the end of "the initial period" (which ended with the day of the first appointment of a First Minister on 25.5.2007) - see s. 161(5) of the Government of Wales Act 2006.

F406  **S. 59(1)(c)(iv) and preceding word inserted by The Government of Wales Act 2006 (Consequential Modifications and Transitional Provisions) Order (S.I. 2007/1388), arts. 1, 3, Sch. 1 para. 61(6),** the amending provision coming into force immediately after the end of "the initial period" (which ended with the day of the first appointment of a First Minister on 25.5.2007) - see s. 161(5) of the Government of Wales Act 2006.


**Commencement Information**

I30  **S. 59 wholly in force at 30.5.1996; s. 59 not in force at Royal Assent see. s. 70(3); s. 59 in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(f); s. 59 in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(f)**

**[F410]**

**[F411]**

**59A National security**

(1) **Rules of court may make provision for enabling a county court or sheriff court in which a claim is brought in respect of alleged discrimination contrary to this Act (including anything treated by virtue of this Act as amounting to discrimination contrary to this Act), where the court considers it expedient in the interests of national security—**

(a) **to exclude from all or part of the proceedings—**

(i) the claimant;

(ii) the claimant's representatives;

(iii) any assessors;

(b) **to permit a claimant or representative who has been excluded to make a statement to the court before the commencement of the proceedings, or the part of the proceedings, from which he is excluded;**
(c) to take steps to keep secret all or part of the reasons for the court's decision in the proceedings.

(2) The Attorney General or, in Scotland, the Advocate General for Scotland, may appoint a person to represent the interests of a claimant in, or in any part of, proceedings from which the claimant or his representatives are excluded by virtue of subsection (1).

(3) A person may be appointed under subsection (2) only—
(a) in relation to proceedings in England and Wales, if he has a general qualification (within the meaning of section 71 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41)), or
(b) in relation to proceedings in Scotland, if he is—
(i) an advocate, or
(ii) qualified to practice as a solicitor in Scotland.

(4) A person appointed under subsection (2) shall not be responsible to the person whose interests he is appointed to represent.[]

**PART VIII**

**MISCELLANEOUS**

60 Appointment by Secretary of State of advisers.

[F412](1) The Secretary of State may appoint such persons as he thinks fit to advise or assist him in connection with matters relating to the employment of disabled persons and persons who have had a disability.

(2) Persons may be appointed by the Secretary of State to act generally or in relation to a particular area or locality.

(3) The Secretary of State may pay to any person appointed under this section such allowances and compensation for loss of earnings as he considers appropriate.

(4) The approval of the Treasury is required for any payment under this section.

(5) In subsection (1) “employment” includes self-employment.

(6) The Secretary of State may by order—
(a) provide for section 17 of, and Schedule 2 to, the Disabled Persons (Employment) Act 1944 (national advisory council and district advisory committees) to cease to have effect—
   (i) so far as concerns the national advisory council; or
   (ii) so far as concerns district advisory committees; or
(b) repeal that section and Schedule.

(7) At any time before the coming into force of an order under paragraph (b) of subsection (6), section 17 of the Act of 1944 shall have effect as if in subsection (1), after “disabled persons” in each case there were inserted “, and persons who have had a disability,” and as if at the end of the section there were added—

“(3) For the purposes of this section—
   (a) a person is a disabled person if he is a disabled person for the purposes of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995; and
   (b) “disability” has the same meaning as in that Act.”

(8) At any time before the coming into force of an order under paragraph (a)(i) or (b) of subsection (6), section 16 of the Chronically Sick and Disabled Persons Act 1970 (which extends the functions of the national advisory council) shall have effect as if after “disabled persons” in each case there were inserted “, and persons who have had a disability, ” and as if at the end of the section there were added—

“(2) For the purposes of this section—
   (a) a person is a disabled person if he is a disabled person for the purposes of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995; and
   (b) “disability” has the same meaning as in that Act.”]
(2) In subsection (1)—
   (a) for “persons registered as handicapped by disablement” substitute “ disabled persons ”;
   (b) for “their disablement” substitute “ their disability ”; and
   (c) for “are not subject to disablement” substitute “ do not have a disability ”.

(3) In subsection (2), for the words from “any of one or more companies” to “so required and prohibited” substitute “ any company, association or body ”.

(4) After subsection (2) insert—
   “(2A) The only kind of company which the Minister himself may form in exercising his powers under this section is a company which is—
   (a) required by its constitution to apply its profits, if any, or other income in promoting its objects; and
   (b) prohibited by its constitution from paying any dividend to its members.”

(5) After subsection (5) insert—
   “(5A) For the purposes of this section—
   (a) a person is a disabled person if he is a disabled person for the purposes of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995; and
   (b) “disability” has the same meaning as in that Act.”

(6) The provisions of section 16 (preference to be given under section 15 of that Act to ex-service men and women) shall become subsection (1) of that section and at the end insert—
   “and whose disability is due to that service.
   (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) of this section, a disabled person’s disability shall be treated as due to service of a particular kind only in such circumstances as may be prescribed.”

(7) The following provisions of the Act of 1944 shall cease to have effect—
   (a) section 1 (definition of “disabled person”);
   (b) sections 6 to 8 (the register of disabled persons);
   (c) sections 9 to 11 (obligations on employers with substantial staffs to employ a quota of registered persons);
   (d) section 12 (the designated employment scheme for persons registered as handicapped by disablement);
   (e) section 13 (interpretation of provisions repealed by this Act);
   (f) section 14 (records to be kept by employers);
   (g) section 19 (proceedings in relation to offences); and
   (h) section 21 (application as respects place of employment, and nationality).

(8) Any provision of subordinate legislation in which “disabled person” is defined by reference to the Act of 1944 shall be construed as if that expression had the same meaning as in this Act.

(9) Subsection (8) does not prevent the further amendment of any such provision by subordinate legislation.]
Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Extent Information
E119 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 41; see s. 70(6)

Textual Amendments
F413 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Commencement Information
I31 S. 61 wholly in force at 2.12.1996; s. 61 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); s. 61 in force at 2.12.1996 by S.I. 1996/1474, art. 2(3), Sch. Pt. III (with art. 3)

Marginal Citations
M7 1944 c. 10.

Textual Amendments
F414 S. 62 repealed (E.W.S.) (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 17, ss. 45, 46 Sch. 3 Pt. I (with s. 38) and (N.I.) (24.9.1996) by S.I. 1996/1921 (N.I. 18), art. 28, Sch. 3 (with Sch. 2)

63 Restriction of publicity: Employment Appeal Tribunal.

Textual Amendments
F415 S. 63 repealed (E.W.S.) (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 17, ss. 45, 46, Sch. 3 Pt. I (with s. 38)

64 Application to Crown etc.

[F416] (A1) The following provisions bind the Crown—
(a) sections 21B to 21E and Part 5A, and
(b) the other provisions of this Act so far as applying for the purposes of provisions mentioned in paragraph (a);
and sections 57 and 58 shall apply for purposes of provisions mentioned in paragraph (a) as if service as a Crown servant were employment by the Crown.]
(1) This Act \[^{418}\], other than the provisions mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (A1), applies—
   (a) to an act done by or for purposes of a Minister of the Crown or government department, or
   (b) to an act done on behalf of the Crown by a statutory body, or a person holding a statutory office,
as it applies to an act done by a private person.
(2) \[^{419}\] . . Part II applies to service—
   (a) for purposes of a Minister of the Crown or government department, other than service of a person holding a statutory office, or
   (b) on behalf of the Crown for purposes of a person holding a statutory office or purposes of a statutory body,
as it applies to employment by a private person.
\[^{420}\](2A) Subsections \[^{421}\](A1) to(2) have effect subject to section 64A and section 64B.]
\[^{422}\](2A) Subsections \[^{423}\](A1) to(2) have effect subject to section 64A.]
(3) The provisions of Parts II to IV of the 1947 Act apply to proceedings against the Crown under this Act as they apply to Crown proceedings in England and Wales \[^{424}\]. . . .
(4) The provisions of Part V of the 1947 Act apply to proceedings against the Crown under this Act as they apply to proceedings in Scotland which by virtue of that Part are treated as civil proceedings by or against the Crown; but the proviso to section 44 of that Act (removal of proceedings from the sheriff court to the Court of Session) does not apply.
(5) \[^{425}\] . . . . . . . . . . . . .
(6) \[^{425}\] . . . . . . . . . . . . .
(7) \[^{426}\] . . Part II does not apply to service in any of the naval, military or air forces of the Crown.
(8) In this section—
   “the 1947 Act” means the \[^{MB}\]Crown Proceedings Act 1947;
   “Crown proceedings” means proceedings which, by virtue of section 23 of the 1947 Act, are treated for the purposes of Part II of that Act as civil proceedings by or against the Crown;
   “service for purposes of a Minister of the Crown or government department” does not include service in any office for the time being mentioned in Schedule 2 (Ministerial offices) to the \[^{MB}\]House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975;
   “statutory body” means a body set up by or under an enactment;
   “statutory office” means an office so set up; \[^{430}\] . .
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for
the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Extent Information

E121 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 44; see s. 70(6)

Textual Amendments

F416 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F417 S. 64(A1) inserted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005 for certain purposes and otherwise 4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 31(2); S.I. 2005/2774, arts. 3(j), 4(f) and said subsection inserted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 24(2); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(l)

F418 Words in s. 64(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005 for certain purposes and otherwise 4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 31(3); S.I. 2005/2774, arts. 3(j), 4(f) and same words inserted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 24(3); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(l)


F421 Words in s. 64(2A) (as inserted (N.I.)) substituted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 24(4); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(l)


F423 In s. 64(2A) words substituted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005 for certain purposes and otherwise 4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 31(4); S.I. 2005/2774, arts. 3(j), 4(f)

F424 Words in s. 64(3) repealed (1.10.2005) by The Civil Procedure (Modification of Crown Proceedings Act 1947) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/2712), art. 3, Sch. 2 [para. 3]


S. 64(8): definition of "British Transport Police" ceases to have effect (1.7.2004) by virtue of Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003 (c. 20), ss. 73, 120, Sch. 5 para. 4 (with s. 72); S.I. 2004/1572, art. 3 (jjj)


Marginal Citations
M8 1947 c. 44.
M9 1975 c. 24.

[F43264A Police E+W+S F433 ........................................... ]

Extent Information
E122 This section extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate s. 64A exists for Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments

F433 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[F43464A Police Service of Northern Ireland and the Police Service of Northern Ireland Reserve N.I.]

(1) For the purposes of Part II, the holding of the office of constable as a police officer shall be treated as employment –
(a) by the Chief Constable as respects any act done by him in relation to that office or a holder of it;

(b) by the Policing Board as respects any act done by it in relation to that office or the holder of it.

(2) For the purposes of section 58 –

(a) the holding of the office of constable as a police officer shall be treated as employment by the Chief Constable (and as not being employment by any other person); and

(b) anything done by a person holding such an office in the performance, or purported performance, of his functions shall be treated as done in the course of that employment.

(3) There shall be paid out of funds put at the disposal of the Chief Constable under section 10(5) of the Police (Northern Ireland) Act 2000 —

(a) any compensation, damages or costs awarded against the Chief Constable in any proceedings brought against him under Part II or III, and any costs incurred by him in any such proceedings so far as not recovered by him in the proceedings; and

(b) any sum required by the Chief Constable for the settlement of any claim made against him under Part II or III if the settlement is approved by the Policing Board.

(4) The Chief Constable may, in such cases and to such extent as appear to him to be appropriate, pay —

(a) any compensation, damages or costs awarded in proceedings under Part II or III against a police officer;

(b) any costs incurred and not recovered by a police officer in such proceedings; and

(c) any sum required in connection with the settlement of a claim that has or might have given rise to such proceedings if the settlement is approved by the Policing Board.

(5) The Chief Constable may make arrangements for the legal representation of a police officer in any proceedings mentioned in subsection (4).

(6) This section —

(a) applies in relation to a person serving with the Police Service of Northern Ireland by virtue of section 98 of the Police Act 1996 or section 23 or 24 of the Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 as it applies in relation to a police officer;

(b) applies in relation to a police officer who by virtue of paragraph 7(2)(a) or 8(4)(a) of Schedule 3 to the Police (Northern Ireland) Act 1998 is under the direction and control of the Police Ombudsman for Northern Ireland as if —

(i) in subsection (1) the reference to the Chief Constable included a reference to the Ombudsman;

(ii) in subsections (2), (4) and (5) the references to the Chief Constable were references to the Ombudsman.
Other police bodies

(1) For the purposes of Part II, the holding of the office of constable otherwise than as a police officer shall be treated as employment –
   (a) by the chief officer of police as respects any act done by him in relation to that office or a holder of it;
   (b) by the police authority as respects any act done by it in relation to that office or the holder of it;

(2) For the purposes of section 58 –
   (a) the holding of the office of constable otherwise than as a police officer shall be treated as employment by the chief officer of police (and as not being employment by any other person); and
   (b) anything done by a person holding such an office in the performance, or purported performance, of his functions shall be treated as done in the course of that employment.

(3) There shall be paid out of the police fund –
   (a) any compensation, damages or costs awarded against a chief officer of police in any proceedings brought against him under Part II or III, and any costs incurred by him in any such proceedings so far as not recovered by him in the proceedings; and
   (b) any sum required by a chief officer of police for the settlement of any claim made against him under Part II if the settlement is approved by the police authority.

(4) A police authority may, in such cases and to such extent as appear to it to be appropriate, pay out of the police fund –
   (a) any compensation, damages or costs awarded in proceedings under Part II against a person under the direction and control of the chief officer of police;
   (b) any costs incurred and not recovered by such a person in such proceedings; and
(c) any sum required in connection with the settlement of a claim that has or might have given rise to such proceedings.

(5) A police authority may make arrangements for the legal representation of any person under the direction and control of the chief officer of police in any proceedings mentioned in subsection (4).

[\(F436\) (6) Subject to subsection (8), in this section in relation to any body of constables—

(a) “chief officer of police” means the person who has the direction and control of the body;

(b) “police authority” means the authority by which the members of the body are paid; and

(c) “police fund” means money provided by that authority.]

(7) Nothing in subsections (3) to (6) applies in relation to the police.

(8) In relation to a constable of a force who is not under the direction and control of the chief officer of police for that force, references in this section to the chief officer of police are references to the chief officer of the force under whose direction and control he is, and references in this section to the police authority are references to the relevant police authority for that force.]

Textual Amendments

| F435 | Words in s. 64B(3)(4) inserted (9.11.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 6; S.R. 2007/466, art. 2 |
| F436 | S. 64B(6) substituted (1.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15), ss. 59, 178(8), Sch. 4 para. 67; S.I. 2006/378, art. 4(1) (subject to art. 4(2)-(7)) |

65 Application to Parliament.

| F437 |

Extent Information

| E123 | In the application of this Act to Northern Ireland, this section is omitted: see s. 70(6), Sch. 8 para. 45 |

Textual Amendments

| F437 | Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b) |

66 Government appointments outside Part II.

| F438 |
67 Regulations and orders.

[F439] (1) Any power under this Act to make regulations or orders shall be exercisable by statutory rule for the purposes of the Statutory Rules (Northern Ireland) Order 1979.

(2) Any such power may be exercised to make different provision for different cases, including different provision for different areas or localities.

(3) Any such power, includes power—

(a) to make such incidental, supplementary, consequential or transitional provision as appears to the Northern Ireland department exercising the power to be expedient; and

(b) to provide for a person to exercise a discretion in dealing with any matter.

[F440] (3A) Where regulations under section 21D(7)(b) provide for the omission of section 21D(5), the provision that may be made by the regulations in exercise of the power conferred by subsection (3)(a) includes provision amending section 21D for the purpose of omitting references to section 21D(5).

(3B) The provision that may be made by regulations under section 21G(5)(b) in exercise of the power conferred by subsection (3)(a) includes provision amending or repealing section 21G(4).

[F441] (4) Subsection (4A) applies to—

(a) the first regulations to be made under section 21H(1);

(b) regulations under section 47J(3);

(c) regulations under section 67A(3);

(d) regulations under paragraph 6A(2) of Schedule 1.

(4A) No regulations to which this subsection applies shall be made unless a draft of the regulations has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, the Assembly.

(4B) An order under section 47(1), if made without a draft having been laid before and approved by a resolution of, the Assembly shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the Assembly; but the exercise of the discretion conferred by this subsection is subject to section 67A.

(5) Any other order made under this Act, other than an order under section 3(9), [F442] 54A(6)(a) or 70(3), and any regulations made under this Act shall be subject to negative resolution within the meaning of section 41(6) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954 as if they were statutory instruments within the meaning of that Act.

(6) Section 41(3) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954 shall apply in relation to any instrument or document which by virtue of this Act is required to be laid before
the Assembly as if it were a statutory instrument or statutory document within the meaning of that Act.

(7) Subsection (1) does not require an order under section 43 which applies only to a specified vehicle, or to vehicles of a specified person, to be made by statutory rule.

(8) Nothing in section 40(6) or 46(5) affects the powers conferred by subsections (2) and (3).]
**Exercise of discretion under section 67(4B) **

(1) Before the Department for Regional Development decides which of the Assembly procedures available under section 67(4B) is to be adopted in connection with the making of any particular order under section 47(1), it must consult such persons as it thinks appropriate.

(2) An order under section 47(1) may be made without a draft of the order having been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, the Assembly only if—

(a) regulations under subsection (3) are in force; and

(b) the making of the order without such laying and approval is in accordance with the regulations

(3) Regulations may set out the basis on which the Department for Regional Development, when it comes to make an order under section 47(1), will decide which of the Assembly procedures available under section 67(4B) is to be adopted in connection with the making of the order.

(4) Before making regulations under subsection (3), the Department for Regional Development must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.

---

**Annual report on rail vehicle exemption orders**

(1) Before the Department for Regional Development decides which of the Assembly procedures available under section 67(4B) is to be adopted in connection with the making of any particular order under section 47(1), it must consult such persons as it thinks appropriate.

(2) An order under section 47(1) may be made without a draft of the order having been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, the Assembly only if—

(a) regulations under subsection (3) are in force; and

(b) the making of the order without such laying and approval is in accordance with the regulations

(3) Regulations may set out the basis on which the Department for Regional Development, when it comes to make an order under section 47(1), will decide which of the Assembly procedures available under section 67(4B) is to be adopted in connection with the making of the order.

(4) Before making regulations under subsection (3), the Department for Regional Development must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.
67B Annual report on rail exemption orders

(1) The Department for Regional Development must after each 31st December prepare, in respect of the year that ended with that day, a report on—

(a) the exercise in that year of the power to make orders under section 47(1); and

(b) the exercise in that year of the discretion under section 67(4B).

(2) A report under subsection (1) must (in particular) contain—

(a) details of each order made under section 47(1) in the year in respect of which the report is made; and

(b) details of consultation carried out under sections 47(3) and 67A(1) in connection with orders made in that year under section 47(1).

(3) The Department for Regional Development must lay before the Assembly each report that it prepares under this section.

---

F819

68 Interpretation.

(1) In this Act—

“accessibility certificate” means a certificate issued under section 41(1)(a);

“act” includes a deliberate omission;

“the Agency” means the Labour Relations Agency;

“approval certificate” means a certificate issued under section 42(4);

“the Assembly” means the Northern Ireland Assembly;

“criminal investigation” has the meaning given in subsection (1A);]

“criminal proceedings” includes service law proceedings (as defined by section 324(5) of the Armed Forces Act 2006);]

“the Department of Economic Development” means the Department of Economic Development in Northern Ireland;

“the Department of the Environment” means the Department of the Environment for Northern Ireland;

“the Department of Health and Social Services” means the Department of Health and Social Services for Northern Ireland;

“employment” means, subject to any prescribed provision, employment under a contract of service or of apprenticeship or a contract personally to do work and related expressions are to be construed accordingly;

“employment at an establishment in Northern Ireland” is to be construed in accordance with subsections (2) to (4)

“employment services” has the meaning given in section 21A(1);]
“enactment” means any statutory provision within the meaning of section 1(f) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954 [F454], and (except in section 56(5)) includes an enactment comprised in, or an instrument made under, an Act of the Scottish Parliament;

“government department” means a Northern Ireland department or a department of the Government of the United Kingdom;

[F455]“group insurance arrangement” means an arrangement between an employer and another for the provision by the other of facilities by way of insurance to the employer’s employees or to any class of those employees;

[F456]“Minister of the Crown” includes the Treasury and the Defence Council

“Northern Ireland department” includes (except in sections 51 and 52) the head of a Northern Ireland department;

“occupational pension scheme” has the same meaning as in the Pension Schemes (Northern Ireland) Act 1993;

[F457]“the Office” means the Office of the First Minister and deputy First Minister;

“premises”, includes land of any description;

“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations;

“profession” includes any vocation or occupation;

“provider of services” has the meaning given in section 19(2)(b);

[F458]“public investigator functions” has the meaning given in subsection (1B);

“public service vehicle” and “regulated public service vehicle” have the meaning given in section 40;

“PSV accessibility regulations” means regulations made under section 40(1);

“rail vehicle” and “regulated rail vehicle” have the meaning given in section 46;

“rail vehicle accessibility regulations” means regulations made under section 46(1);

“regulations” means—

(a) [F459]in section 17A, regulations made by the Department for Employment and Learning;

(b) in Part V of this Act, regulations made by the Department of the Environment;

(c) [F460]in any other provision of this Act, regulations made by the Office of the First Minister and deputy First Minister:

“section 21 duty” means any duty imposed by or under section 21;

“taxi” and “regulated taxi” have the meaning given in section 32;

“taxi accessibility regulations” means regulations made under section 32(1);

“trade” includes any business;

“trade organisation” has the meaning given in section 13;
In this Act “criminal investigation” means—
(a) any investigation which a person in carrying out functions to which section 21B(1) applies has a duty to conduct with a view to it being ascertained whether a person should be charged with an offence, or whether a person charged with or prosecuted for an offence is guilty of it; or
(b) any investigation which is conducted by a person in carrying out functions to which section 21B(1) applies and which in the circumstances may lead to a decision by that person to institute criminal proceedings which the person has power to conduct.

In subsections (1A) and (1B)—
“offence” includes [F463 any service offence within the meaning of the Armed Forces Act 2006], and
“offender” is to be construed accordingly.

Employment (including employment on board a ship to which subsection (2B) applies or on an aircraft or hovercraft to which subsection (2C) applies) is to be regarded as being employment at an establishment in Northern Ireland if the employee—
(a) does his work wholly or partly in Northern Ireland; or,
(b) does his work wholly outside Northern Ireland and subsection (2A) applies.

This subsection applies if—
(a) the employer has a place of business at an establishment in Northern Ireland;
(b) the work is for the purposes of the business carried on at the establishment; and
(c) the employee is ordinarily resident in Northern Ireland—
(i) at the time when he applies for or is offered the employment, or
(ii) at any time during the course of the employment.

This subsection applies to a ship if—
(a) it is registered at a port of registry in Northern Ireland; or
(b) it belongs to or is possessed by Her Majesty in right of the Government of the United Kingdom.

This subsection applies to an aircraft or hovercraft if—
(a) it is—
(i) registered in the United Kingdom, and
(ii) operated by a person who has his principal place of business, or is ordinarily resident, in Northern Ireland; or
(b) it belongs to or is possessed by Her Majesty in right of the Government of the United Kingdom.

The following are not to be regarded as being employment at an establishment in Northern Ireland—
(a) employment on board a ship to which subsection (2B) does not apply;
Employment of a prescribed kind, or in prescribed circumstances, is to be regarded as employment on an aircraft or hovercraft to which subsection (2C) does not apply.]  

(4) Employment of a prescribed kind, or in prescribed circumstances, is to be regarded as not being employment at an establishment in [F466 Northern Ireland].

(5) [F466.

---

**Textual Amendments**

F447 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A–49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F448 S. 68(1) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 paras. 1, 47(1) of this Act.


F450 S. 68(1): definition of "criminal investigation" inserted (N.I.) (31.10.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 26(2); S.R. 2007/430, art. 2(b)

F451 S. 68(1): definition of "criminal proceedings" substituted (28.3.2009 for certain purposes and 31.10.2009 in so far as not already in force) by Armed Forces Act 2006 (c. 52), ss. 378, 383, Sch. 16 para. 134(a); S.I. 2009/812, art. 3(a)(b) (with transitional provisions in S.I. 2009/1059); S.I. 2009/1167, art. 4


F453 S. 68(1): definition of "employment services" inserted (N.I.) (31.10.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 26(2); S.R. 2007/430, art. 2(b)


F457 S. 68(1): definition of "the Office" inserted (N.I.) (31.10.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 26(2); S.R. 2007/430, art. 2(b)

F458 S. 68(1): definition of "public investigator functions" inserted (N.I.) (31.10.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 26(2); S.R. 2007/430, art. 2(b)
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part VIII – Miscellaneous
Chapter 3 – SUPPLEMENTARY

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for
the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)


F462 S. 68(1A)-(1C) inserted (N.I.) (31.10.2007.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19(1), Sch. 1 para. 26(3); S.R. 2007/430, art. 2(b)

F463 S. 68(1C): words in definition of "offence" substituted (28.3.2009 for certain purposes and 31.10.2009 insofar as not already in force) by Armed Forces Act 2006 (c. 52), ss. 378, 383, Sch. 16 para. 134(b); S.I. 2009/812, art. 3(a)(b) (with transitional provisions in S.I. 2009/1059); S.I. 2009/1167, art. 4


F465 Words in s. 68(2) substituted (N.I.) by virtue of s. 70(6), Sch. 8 paras. 1, 47(1) of this Act.


Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C43 S. 68(1) modified (24.4.2009 for certain purposes and 31.10.2009 insofar as not already in force) by The Armed Forces Act 2006 (Transitional Provisions etc) Order (S.I. 2009/1059), arts. 1, 205, [Sch. 1 para. 36(1)]

C44 S. 68(1C) modified (24.4.2009 for certain purposes and 31.10.2009 insofar as not already in force) by The Armed Forces Act 2006 (Transitional Provisions etc) Order (S.I. 2009/1059), arts. 1, 205, [Sch. 1 para. 36(2)]

Commencement Information

I33 S. 68 wholly in force at 2.12.1996; s. 68 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); s. 68(1) in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(j); s. 68(1) in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(i); s. 68(2)-(5) in force (E.W.S.) at 2.12.1996 by S.I. 1996/1474, art. 2(3), Sch. Pt. III; s. 68(2)-(5) in force (N.I.) at 2.12.1996 by S.R. 1996/280, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. II

69 Financial provisions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial provisions.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) any expenditure incurred by a Minister of the Crown under this Act;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) any increase attributable to this Act in the sums payable out of money so provided under or by virtue of any other enactment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Extent Information

E128 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to N.I. only.
Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F467 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Commencement Information

134 S. 69 wholly in force at 30.5.1996; s. 69 not in force at Royal Assent see. s. 70(3); s. 69 in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(k); s. 69 in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(j)

70 Short title, commencement, extent etc.

F468 (1) This Act may be cited as the Disability Discrimination Act 1995.

(2) This section (apart from subsections (4), (5) and (7)) comes into force on the passing of this Act.

F469 (2A) The following provisions of this Act—

(a) section 36 so far as it applies to designated vehicles,

(b) section 36A, and

(c) section 38 (which has already been brought in force in England and Wales by an order under subsection (3)) so far as it extends to Scotland, come into force 2 months after the passing of the Local Transport Act 2008.

(3) The other provisions of this Act come into force on such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint and different days may be appointed for different purposes.

(4) Schedule 6 makes consequential amendments.

(5) The repeals set out in Schedule 7 shall have effect.

F470 (5A) Sections 7A, 49I and 49G extend to England and Wales only.

(5B) Sections 7C and 7D extend to Scotland only.

(6) Subject to subsections (5A) and (5B), this Act extends to England and Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland; but in their application to Northern Ireland the provisions of this Act mentioned in Schedule 8 shall have effect subject to the modifications set out in that Schedule.

F471 (7) In Part II of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 and in Part II of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (bodies whose members are disqualified) in each case insert at the appropriate places—

F472 “The National Disability Council.”

“The Northern Ireland Disability Council”

(8) Consultations which are required by any provision of this Act to be held by the Secretary of State may be held by him before the coming into force of that provision.
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

Part VIII – Miscellaneous

Chapter 3 – SUPPLEMENTARY

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Extent Information

E129 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to Northern Ireland only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 48 see s. 70(6)

Subordinate Legislation Made

P2 S. 70(3) power partly exercised: 1.1.1996 appointed day for specified provisions by S.I. 1995/3330, art. 2
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: 2.1.1996 appointed day for specified provisions by S.R. 1996/1, art. 2
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: 17.5.1996 appointed day for specified provisions by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: 30.5.1996 appointed day for specified provisions by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: different days appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1996/1474, art. 2
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: different days appointed for specified provisions by S.R. 1996/280, art. 2
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: 2.12.1996 appointed day for specified provision by S.R. 1996/580, art. 2
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: different dates appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 1999/1190, arts. 2-5
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: different days appointed for specified provisions by S.R. 1999/196, arts. 2-4
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: 13.5.1998 appointed day for specified provisions by S.R. 1998/183, art. 2
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: 30.8.2000 appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 2000/1969, art. 2
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: different dates appointed for specified provisions and purposes by S.I. 2000/2989, arts. 2, 3
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: different dates appointed for specified provisions and purposes by S.R. 2001/163, art. 2
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: different dates appointed for specified provisions by S.I. 2001/2030, arts. 2, 3
S. 70(3) power partly exercised: different dates appointed for specified purposes by S.R. 2001/439, art. 2(1)
s. 70(3) power partly exercised: 21.1.2003 appointed day for specified provisions by S.R. 2003/24, art. 2
s. 70(3) power partly exercised: 5.2.2003 appointed day for specified provision by S.I. 2003/215, art. 2
s. 70(3) power partly exercised: 6.4.2005 appointed day for specified provision by S.I. 2005/1122, art. 2
s. 70(3) power partly exercised: 3.6.2008 appointed day for specified provision by S.R. 2008/236, art. 2

Textual Amendments

F468 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F469 S. 70(2A) inserted (E.W.S.) (26.1.2009) by Local Transport Act 2008 (c. 26), ss. {56(9)}, 134

Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
Part VIII – Miscellaneous
Chapter 3 – SUPPLEMENTARY

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for
the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

F471 Words in s. 70(5A) substituted (E.W.S.) (1.10.2007) by Equality Act 2006 (c. 3), ss. 40, 93, Sch. 3 para. 55 (with s. 92); S.I. 2007/2603, art. 2 (subject to art. 3)

F472 Words in s. 70(6) substituted (E.W.S.) for words "This Act extends to Northern Ireland," (3.7.2003 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.10.2004) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1673), regs. 1(2)(3), 28(b)

F473 S. 70(7) repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1610 (N.I. 2), art. 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch. Appendix

F474 Words in s. 70(7) repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix

Modifications etc. (not altering text)
C45 S. 70(3) applied (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, s. 583(2)(5)(b) (with ss. 1(4), 561, 562, Sch. 39)

Commencement Information
I35 S. 70 partly in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(2)(3); S. 70(7) in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(1); s. 70(7) in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(1); s. 70(4) in force (E.W.S.) at 2.12.1996 by S.I. 1996/1474, art. 2(3), Sch. Pt. III; s. 70(4) in force (N.I.) at 2.12.1996 by S.R. 1996/280, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. II; s. 70(5) in force (E.W.S.) for specified purposes at 2.12.1996 by S.I. 1996/1474, art. 2(3), Sch. Pt. III (with s. 3); s. 70(5) in force for specified purposes (N.I.) at 2.12.1996 by S.R. 1996/280, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. II (with art. 3)

Marginal Citations
M10 1975 c. 24.
M11 1975 c. 25.
SCHEDULE 1 – Provisions Supplementing Section 1

**Impairment**

1. Regulations may make provision, for the purposes of this Act—
   (a) for conditions of a prescribed description to be treated as amounting to impairments;
   (b) for conditions of a prescribed description to be treated as not amounting to impairments.

(3) Regulations made under sub-paragraph (2) may make provision as to the meaning of “condition” for the purposes of those regulations.

**Textual Amendments**

- **F475** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by **Equality Act 2010** (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, **Sch. 2** (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, **art. 16**); S.I. 2010/2317, **art. 2(15)(i)** (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, **art. 2(h)**
- **F476** Sch. 1 para. 1(1) repealed (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by **Disability Discrimination Act 2005** (c. 13), ss. 18(2), 19(2), 20(3)-(6), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 2005/2774, **art. 3(1)(i)** and said Sch. 1 para. 1(1) repealed (N.I.) (31.10.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 18(2), 19(2), **Sch. 2**; S.R. 2007/430, **art. 2(a)(d)**

**Commencement Information**

- **I36** Sch. 1 para. 1 wholly in force at 30.5.1996; Sch. 1 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); Sch. 1 para. 1 in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, **art. 3(m)**; Sch. 1 para. 1 in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, **art. 3(1)**
Long-term effects

2 [F477 (1) The effect of an impairment is a long-term effect if—
   (a) it has lasted at least 12 months;
   (b) the period for which it lasts is likely to be at least 12 months; or
   (c) it is likely to last for the rest of the life of the person affected.

(2) Where an impairment ceases to have a substantial adverse effect on a person’s ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities, it is to be treated as continuing to have that effect if that effect is likely to recur.

(3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2), the likelihood of an effect recurring shall be disregarded in prescribed circumstances.

(4) Regulations may prescribe circumstances in which, for the purposes of this Act—
   (a) an effect which would not otherwise be a long-term effect is to be treated as such an effect; or
   (b) an effect which would otherwise be a long-term effect is to be treated as not being such an effect.]

Severe disfigurement

3 [F478 (1) An impairment which consists of a severe disfigurement is to be treated as having a substantial adverse effect on the ability of the person concerned to carry out normal day-to-day activities.

(2) Regulations may provide that in prescribed circumstances a severe disfigurement is not to be treated as having that effect.

(3) Regulations under sub-paragraph (2) may, in particular, make provision with respect to deliberately acquired disfigurements.]

extent information

E131 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I. only.

Textual Amendments

F477 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(h)

Commencement Information

I37 Sch. 1 para. 2 wholly in force at 30.5.1996; Sch. 1 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); Sch. 1 para. 2 in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(m); Sch. 1 para. 2 in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(1)
Normal day-to-day activities

(1) An impairment is to be taken to affect the ability of the person concerned to carry out normal day-to-day activities only if it affects one of the following—

(a) mobility;
(b) manual dexterity;
(c) physical co-ordination;
(d) continence;
(e) ability to lift, carry or otherwise move everyday objects;
(f) speech, hearing or eyesight;
(g) memory or ability to concentrate, learn or understand; or
(h) perception of the risk of physical danger.

(i) taking part in normal social interaction; or
(j) forming social relationships

(2) Regulations may prescribe—

(a) circumstances in which an impairment which does not have an effect falling within sub-paragraph (1) is to be taken to affect the ability of the person concerned to carry out normal day-to-day activities;
(b) circumstances in which an impairment which has an effect falling within sub-paragraph (1) is to be taken not to affect the ability of the person concerned to carry out normal day-to-day activities.
Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information
Sch. 1 para. 4 wholly in force at 30.5.1996; Sch. 1 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); Sch. 1 para. 4 in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(m); Sch. 1 para. 4 in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(1)

Substantial adverse effects

5 Regulations may make provision for the purposes of this Act—
(a) for an effect of a prescribed kind on the ability of a person to carry out normal day-to-day activities to be treated as a substantial adverse effect;
(b) for an effect of a prescribed kind on the ability of a person to carry out normal day-to-day activities to be treated as not being a substantial adverse effect.

Effect of medical treatment

6 (1) An impairment which would be likely to have a substantial adverse effect on the ability of the person concerned to carry out normal day-to-day activities, but for the fact that measures are being taken to treat or correct it, is to be treated as having that effect.

(2) In sub-paragraph (1) “measures” includes, in particular, medical treatment and the use of a prosthesis or other aid.

(3) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply—
(a) in relation to the impairment of a person’s sight, to the extent that the impairment is, in his case, correctable by spectacles or contact lenses or in such other ways as may be prescribed; or
(b) in relation to such other impairments as may be prescribed, in such circumstances as may be prescribed.]
Persons deemed to be disabled

(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), a person who has cancer, HIV infection or multiple sclerosis is to be deemed to have a disability, and hence to be a disabled person.

(2) Regulations may provide for sub-paragraph (1) not to apply in the case of a person who has cancer if he has cancer of a prescribed description.

(3) A description of cancer prescribed under sub-paragraph (2) may (in particular) be framed by reference to consequences for a person of his having it.}
(b) afterwards, to have had a disability and hence to have been a disabled person during that period.

(3) A certificate of registration shall be conclusive evidence, in relation to the person with respect to whom it was issued, of the matters certified.

(4) Unless the contrary is shown, any document purporting to be a certificate of registration shall be taken to be such a certificate and to have been validly issued.

(5) Regulations may provide for prescribed descriptions of person to be deemed to have disabilities, and hence to be disabled persons, for the purposes of this Act.

[f486](5A) The generality of sub-paragraph (5) shall not be taken to be prejudiced by the other provisions of this Schedule.

(6) Regulations may prescribe circumstances in which a person who has been deemed to be a disabled person by the provisions of sub-paragraph (1) or regulations made under sub-paragraph (5) is to be treated as no longer being deemed to be such a person.

(7) In this paragraph—

“certificate of registration” means a certificate issued under regulations made under section 6 of the Act of 1944; and

“initial period” means the period of three years beginning with the date on which this paragraph comes into force.

---

**Progressive conditions**

8 [f487](1) Where—

(a) a person has a progressive condition (such as cancer, multiple sclerosis or muscular dystrophy or HIV infection),

(b) as a result of that condition, he has an impairment which has (or had) an effect on his ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities, but

(c) that effect is not (or was not) a substantial adverse effect,
he shall be taken to have an impairment which has such a substantial adverse effect if the condition is likely to result in his having such an impairment.

(2) Regulations may make provision, for the purposes of this paragraph—

(a) for conditions of a prescribed description to be treated as being progressive;

(b) for conditions of a prescribed description to be treated as not being progressive.]

---

**Interpretation**

[F490 In this Schedule, “HIV infection” means infection by a virus capable of causing the Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome.]
SCHEDULE 2

PAST DISABILITIES

1

[F491 The modifications referred to in section 2 are as follows.]

2

[F492 References in Parts II [F493, III and VA] and Part III of the 2005 Order to a disabled person are to be read as references to a person who has had a disability.]
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

SCHEDULE 2 – Past Disabilities

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

| Sch. 2 wholly in force at 30.5.1996; Sch. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); Sch. 2 in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(m); Sch. 2 in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(1) |

| 2A F495 ................. |
| 2B F496 ................. |

Textual Amendments

F496 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F497 2C F498 .................................

Textual Amendments


F498 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

E143 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I. only. Prior to that repeal, different versions of this provision had been created for N.I. and E.W.S. respectively to reflect the different amendment history for each jurisdiction. This version is based on the N.I. version as it stood at the date of the repeal. It does not reflect the history of E.W.S. effects prior to the 2010 repeal, which can be found in earlier versions.

Textual Amendments

F499 Sch. 2 para. 3 substituted (N.I.) (21.2.2004 for certain purposes and 1.10.2004 insofar as not yet in force) by the Disability Discrimination Act (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/55), [reg. 28(1)(b)]

F500 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

SCHEDULE 2 – Past Disabilities

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

F501 Words in Sch. 2 para. 3 inserted (N.I.) (31.10.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 28(3); S.R. 2007/430, art. 2

Commencement Information

145 Sch. 2 wholly in force at 30.5.1996; Sch. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); Sch. 2 in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(m); Sch. 2 in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(1)

[FSO4]

[F503] In sections 4A(3)(b), 4E(3)(b), 4H(3)(b), 6B(3)(b), 7B(3)(b), 14(3)(b), 14B(3) (b), 14D(3)(b) [F504, 15C(3)(a)] and 16A(6), for “has” (in each place it occurs) substitute “ has had ”.

Extent Information

E144 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I. only. Prior to that repeal, different versions of this provision had been created for N.I. and E.W.S. respectively to reflect the different amendment history for each jurisdiction. This version is based on the N.I. version as it stood at the date of the repeal. It does not reflect the history of E.W.S. effects prior to the 2010 repeal, which can be found in earlier versions.

Textual Amendments


F503 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)

F504 Words in Sch. 2 para. 4 inserted (N.I.) (31.10.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 28(4); S.R. 2007/430, art. 2(b)

Commencement Information

146 Sch. 2 wholly in force at 30.5.1996; Sch. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); Sch. 2 in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(m); Sch. 2 in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(1)

[F505] 4ZA

F506 .

Textual Amendments

F505 Sch. 2 para. 4ZA, 4ZB inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 37(6); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(t)

F506 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)

4ZB

F507 .

]}
Textual Amendments

F505 Sch. 2 para. 4ZA, 4ZB inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 37(6); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f)

F507 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F508 Sch. 2 para. 4ZA, 4ZB inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 37(6); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f)

F509 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F510 Sch. 2 para. 4ZA, 4ZB inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 37(6); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f)

F511 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F512 Sch. 2 para. 4ZA, 4ZB inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 37(6); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f)

F513 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F514 Sch. 2 para. 4ZA, 4ZB inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 37(6); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f)

F515 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F516 Sch. 2 para. 4ZA, 4ZB inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 37(6); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f)

F517 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F518 Sch. 2 para. 4ZA, 4ZB inserted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 37(6); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f)

Textual Amendments

F519 For paragraph 2(1) to (3) of Schedule 1, substitute—
“(1) The effect of an impairment is a long-term effect if it has lasted for at least 12 months.

(2) Where an impairment ceases to have a substantial adverse effect on a person’s ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities, it is to be treated as continuing to have that effect if that effect recurs.

(3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2), the recurrence of an effect shall be disregarded in prescribed circumstances.”]
Textual Amendments

F520  Sch. 2 paras. 6-13 inserted (N.I.) (1.9.2005 for certain purposes, otherwise 16.1.2007) by The Special Educational Needs and Disability (Northern Ireland) Order (S.I. 2005/1117 (N.I. 6)), art. 1, {48(10)};

F523  Sch. 2 para. 8 substituted without change of text (10.8.2006 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.9.2006) by virtue of S.R. 2006/332, regs. 1(2)(3), 14

F524  Sch. 2 para. 9 substituted without change of text (10.8.2006 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.9.2006) by virtue of S.R. 2006/332, regs. 1(2)(3), 14

1 F525  (1) In Article 29 of the 2005 Order in paragraph (3)(a), after “disabled” insert “or that he had had a disability”;  
               (2) in paragraph (6)(a) of that Article, after “who do not have” insert “and have not had”; and  
               (3) in paragraph (10) of that Article, for “that particular disability” substitute “and who has not had that particular disability and”.

F526  In Articles 30(1)(c), (1A)(d), (1B)(c), (1C) and (1D) and 37(1)(d), 2(c) and (3) of the 2005 Order, after “not disabled” insert “and who have not had a disability”.

F527  In Article 35(8) of the 2005 Order after “not having that particular disability” insert “and who has not had that particular disability”.

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)
Textual Amendments


F527 Sch. 2 para. 12 substituted without change of text (10.8.2006 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.9.2006) by virtue of S.R. 2006/332, regs. 1(2)(3), 14

F528 In Article 37(4)(b) of the 2005 Order for “has” substitute “has had”.

Textual Amendments

Sch. 3

SCHEDULE 3

SECTIONS [F529 17A(8)] AND 25(6)[F530, 31ADA] ENFORCEMENT AND PROCEDURE

Extent Information

In its application to Northern Ireland, this Schedule has effect subject to the modifications set out in Sch. 8; see s. 70(6)

Textual Amendments


F530 Sch. 3: word in sidenote inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2007) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment etc.) (General Qualifications Bodies) (Alteration of Premises and Enforcement) Regulations (S.I. 2007/2405), regs. 1(2), 4(2)

PART I

EMPLOYMENT

Conciliation

F531
Restriction on proceedings for breach of Part II

1 Except as provided by Part 2, no civil or criminal proceedings may be brought against any person in respect of an act merely because the act is unlawful under that Part.

2 Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the making of an application for judicial review or the investigation or determination of any matter in accordance with Part 10 (investigations) of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 by the Pensions Ombudsman.

3 Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the bringing of proceedings in respect of an offence under section 16B(2).

214

Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

SCHEDULE 3 – Sections 17A(8) and 25(6), 31ADA Enforcement and Procedure

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F531 Sch. 3 para. 1 repealed (E.W.S.) by S.I. 1996/1921 (N.I. 18), art. 28, Sch. 3 (with Sch. 2)

Extant Information

E149 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this section now extends to Northern Ireland only.

Textual Amendments

F532 Act repealed (E.W.S.) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), art. 16, Sch. 3 para. 1 (with S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16);

F533 Sch. 3 para. 2(1) substituted (E.W.S.) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/2770), regs. 1(2)(3), 4(5);

F534 Words in Sch. 3 para. 2(2) inserted (E.W.S.) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Pensions) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/2770), regs. 1(2)(3), 4(5);

F535 1993 c. 49.

F536 Words in Sch. 3 para. 2(2) added (N.I.) by the Disability Discrimination Act (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1(2)(3), 28(2)(c);

F537 1993 c. 49; Part X was amended by Articles 152 to 156 of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 (S.I. 1995/3213 (N.I. 22)), paragraph 70 of Schedule 5 to the Bank of England Act 1998 (c. 11) and sections 49 and 50 of, and Schedule 9 to, the Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act (Northern Ireland) 2000 (c. 4 (N.I.))

F538 Sch. 3 para. 2(3) inserted (E.W.S.) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 38(2); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 3(j) and said sub-paragraph inserted (N.I.) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 29(2); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(f)
Period within which proceedings must be brought

(1) An employment tribunal shall not consider a complaint under section 17A or 25(8) unless it is presented before the end of the period of three months beginning when the act complained of was done.

(1A) Article 249B of the Employment Rights (Northern Ireland) Order 1996 (extension of time limits to facilitate conciliation before institution of proceedings) applies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(a).

(1B) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (1A) shall be treated as provisions of the Employment Rights (Northern Ireland) Order 1996 for the purposes of Article 249B of that Order.

(2) A tribunal may consider any such complaint which is out of time if, in all the circumstances of the case, it considers that it is just and equitable to do so.

(3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)—
   (a) where an unlawful act is attributable to a term in a contract, that act is to be treated as extending throughout the duration of the contract;
   (b) any act extending over a period shall be treated as done at the end of that period; and
   (c) a deliberate omission shall be treated as done when the person in question decided upon it.

(4) In the absence of evidence establishing the contrary, a person shall be taken for the purposes of this paragraph to decide upon an omission—
   (a) when he does an act inconsistent with doing the omitted act; or
   (b) if he has done no such inconsistent act, when the period expires within which he might reasonably have been expected to do the omitted act if it was to be done.
Evidence

4

\[F544\](1) In any proceedings under \[F545\]section 17A or 25(8), a certificate signed by or on behalf of a Minister of the Crown and certifying—

(a) that any conditions or requirements specified in the certificate were imposed by a Minister of the Crown and were in operation at a time or throughout a time so specified, \[F546\] . . .

\[F546\](b) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

shall be conclusive evidence of the matters certified.

\[F547\](1A) In any proceedings under section 17A or 25(8), a certificate signed by or on behalf of the Scottish Ministers and certifying that any conditions or requirements specified in the certificate—

(a) were imposed by a member of the Scottish Executive, and

(b) were in operation at a time or throughout a time so specified,

shall be conclusive evidence of the matters certified.

(1B) In any proceedings under section 17A or 25(8), a certificate signed by or on behalf of the \[F548\]Welsh Ministers] and certifying that any conditions or requirements specified in the certificate—

(a) were imposed by the \[F549\]National Assembly for Wales constituted by the Government of Wales Act 1998, the Welsh Ministers, the First Minister for Wales or the Counsel General to the Welsh Assembly Government], and

(b) were in operation at a time or throughout a time so specified,

shall be conclusive evidence of the matters certified.]

(2) A document purporting to be such a certificate \[F550\]as is mentioned in subparagraph (1), (1A) or (1B)] shall be received in evidence and, unless the contrary is proved, be deemed to be such a certificate.]

Extent Information

E151 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I. only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 50(2); see s. 70(6)

Textual Amendments

F544 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

PART II
DISCRIMINATION IN OTHER AREAS

Restriction on proceedings for breach of Part III

5 [F551 (1) Except as provided by section 25 no civil or criminal proceedings may be brought against any person in respect of an act merely because the act is unlawful under Part III.

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the making of an application for judicial review.]
mentioned in sub-paragraph (1), the period allowed by that sub-paragraph shall be extended by three months.]

(3) A court may consider any claim under section 25 which is out of time if, in all the circumstances of the case, it considers that it is just and equitable to do so.

(4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)—

(a) where an unlawful act of discrimination is attributable to a term in a contract, that act is to be treated as extending throughout the duration of the contract;

(b) any act extending over a period shall be treated as done at the end of that period; and

(c) a deliberate omission shall be treated as done when the person in question decided upon it.

(5) In the absence of evidence establishing the contrary, a person shall be taken for the purposes of this paragraph to decide upon an omission—

(a) when he does an act inconsistent with doing the omitted act; or

(b) if he has done no such inconsistent act, when the period expires within which he might reasonably have been expected to do the omitted act if it was to be done.]
Compensation for injury to feelings

7  \[F558\] In any proceedings under section 25, the amount of any damages awarded as compensation for injury to feelings shall not exceed the prescribed amount.

Evidence

8 \[F559\]

(1) In any proceedings under section 25, a certificate signed by or on behalf of a Minister of the Crown and certifying—
   (a) that any conditions or requirements specified in the certificate were imposed by a Minister of the Crown and were in operation at a time or throughout a time so specified, or
   (b) that an act specified in the certificate was done for the purpose of safeguarding national security,
   shall be conclusive evidence of the matters certified.

(2) A document purporting to be such a certificate shall be received in evidence and, unless the contrary is proved, be deemed to be such a certificate.

(3) In any proceedings under section 25, a certificate signed by or on behalf of the Scottish Ministers and certifying that any conditions or requirements specified in the certificate—
   (a) were imposed by a member of the Scottish Executive, and
   (b) were in operation at a time or throughout a time so specified,
   shall be conclusive evidence of the matters certified.

(4) In any proceedings under section 25, a certificate signed by or on behalf of the Welsh Ministers and certifying that any conditions or requirements specified in the certificate—
   (a) were imposed by the National Assembly for Wales constituted by the Government of Wales Act 1998, the Welsh Ministers, the First Minister for Wales or the Counsel General to the Welsh Assembly Government, and
   (b) were in operation at a time or throughout a time so specified,
   shall be conclusive evidence of the matters certified.

(5) A document purporting to be such a certificate as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (3) or (4) shall be received in evidence and, unless the contrary is proved, be deemed to be such a certificate.\]
PART 3
DISCRIMINATION IN SCHOOLS

Textual Amendments
F563 Sch. 3 Pt. 3 (pars. 9-11) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 19(2), Sch. 3 para. 1 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

Restriction on proceedings for breach of Part 4, Chapter 1

Textual Amendments
F564 Sch. 3 Pt. 3 (pars. 9-11) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 19(2), Sch. 3 para. 1 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
F565 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
Period within which proceedings must be brought

Textual Amendments
F566 Sch. 3 Pt. 3 (paras. 9-11) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 19(2), Sch. 3 para. 1 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
F567 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2 (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Evidence
F568 Sch. 3 Pt. 3 (paras. 9-11) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 19(2), Sch. 3 para. 1 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
F569 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2 (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[PART 4

DISCRIMINATION IN FURTHER AND HIGHER EDUCATION INSTITUTIONS]

Textual Amendments
F570 Sch. 3 Pt. 4 (paras. 12-15) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 30(2), Sch. 3 para. 2 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

Restriction on proceedings for breach of Part 4, Chapter 2
F571 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2 (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
Period within which proceedings must be brought

**Textual Amendments**

- **F573** Sch. 3 Pt. 4 (paras. 12-15) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 30(2), (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
- **F574** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Compensation for injury to feelings

**Textual Amendments**

- **F575** Sch. 3 Pt. 4 (paras. 12-15) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 30(2), (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
- **F576** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Evidence

**Textual Amendments**

- **F577** Sch. 3 Pt. 4 (paras. 12-15) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 30(2), (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
- **F578** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

**PART 5**

DISCRIMINATION IN GENERAL QUALIFICATIONS BODIES

**Textual Amendments**

- **F579** Sch. 3 Pt. 5 (paras. 16-18 and cross-headings) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2007) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment etc.) (General Qualifications Bodies) (Alteration of Premises and Enforcement) Regulations (S.I. 2007/2405), regs. 1(2), 4(3) (with reg. 14)
Restriction on proceedings for breach of Part 4, Chapter 2A

**Textual Amendments**

**F580** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by *Equality Act 2010* (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Period within which proceedings must be brought

**Textual Amendments**

**F581** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by *Equality Act 2010* (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Evidence

**Textual Amendments**

**F582** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by *Equality Act 2010* (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

[SCHEDULE 3A]  VALIDITY OF CONTRACTS, COLLECTIVE AGREEMENTS AND RULES OF UNDERTAKINGS

**Textual Amendments**

**F583** Sch. 3A inserted (N.I.) (21.2.2004 for certain purposes and 1.10.2004 insofar as not yet in force) by the Disability Discrimination Act (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/55), reg. 16(2), (Sch.)
PART I

VALIDITY AND REVISION OF CONTRACTS

1 (1) A term of a contract is void where –
   (a) the making of the contract is, by reason of the inclusion of the term, unlawful
       by virtue of this Part of this Act;
   (b) it is included in furtherance of an act which is unlawful by virtue of this Part
       of this Act; or
   (c) it provides for the doing of an act which is unlawful by virtue of this Part
       of this Act.

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to a term the inclusion of which constitutes, or is
    in furtherance of, or provides for, unlawful discrimination against, or harassment of,
    a party to the contract, but the term shall be unenforceable against that party.

(3) A term in a contract which purports to exclude or limit any provision of this Part
    of this Act is unenforceable by any person in whose favour the term would operate
    apart from this paragraph.

(4) Sub-paragraphs (1), (2) and (3) apply whether the contract was entered into before
    or after the date on which this Schedule comes into operation; but in the case of a
    contract made before that date, those sub-paragraphs do not apply in relation to any
    period before that date.

2 (1) Paragraph 1(3) does not apply –
   (a) to a contract settling a complaint to which section 17A(1) or 25(8) applies
       where the contract is made with the assistance of the Agency; or
   (b) to a contract settling a complaint to which section 17A(1) or 25(8) applies
       if the conditions regulating compromise contracts under this Schedule are
       satisfied in relation to the contract.

(2) The conditions regulating compromise contracts under this Schedule are that –
   (a) the contract must be in writing;
   (b) the contract must relate to the particular complaint;
   (c) the complainant must have received advice from a relevant independent
       adviser as to the terms and effect of the proposed contract and in particular
       its effect on his ability to pursue a complaint before an industrial tribunal;
   (d) there must be in force, when the adviser gives the advice, a contract
       of insurance, or an indemnity provided for members of a profession or
       professional body, covering the risk of a claim by the complainant in respect
       of loss arising in consequence of the advice;
   (e) the contract must identify the adviser; and
   (f) the contract must state that the conditions regulating compromise contracts
       under this Schedule are satisfied.

(3) A person is a relevant independent adviser for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(c) –
   (a) if he is a qualified lawyer;
   (b) if he is an officer, official, employee or member of an independent trade
       union who has been certified in writing by the trade union as competent to
       give advice and as authorised to do so on behalf of the trade union;
(c) if he works at an advice centre (whether as an employee or a volunteer) and has been certified in writing by the centre as competent to give advice and as authorised to do so on behalf of the centre.\[f585; or

(d) if he is a person of a description specified in an order made by the Office.\]

(4) But a person is not a relevant independent adviser for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(c) in relation to the complainant –

(a) if he is, is employed by or is acting in the matter for the other party or a person who is connected with the other party;

(b) in the case of a person within sub-paragraph (3)(b) or (c), if the trade union or advice centre is the other party or a person who is connected with the other party; or

(c) in the case of a person within sub-paragraph (3)(c), if the complainant makes a payment for the advice received from him.

(5) In sub-paragraph (3)(a) “qualified lawyer” means a barrister (whether in practice as such or employed to give legal advice) or a solicitor who holds a practising certificate.

(6) In sub-paragraph (3)(b) “independent trade union” has the same meaning as in the Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 \[f586\].

(7) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (4)(a) any two persons are to be treated as connected –

(a) if one is a company of which the other (directly or indirectly) has control; or

(b) if both are companies of which a third person (directly or indirectly) has control.

(8) An agreement under which the parties agree to submit a dispute to arbitration –

(a) shall be regarded for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b) as being a contract settling a complaint if –

(i) the dispute is covered by a scheme having effect by virtue of an order under Article 84A of the Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 \[f587\], and

(ii) the agreement is to submit it to arbitration in accordance with the scheme; but

(b) shall be regarded as neither being nor including such a contract in any other case.
but such an order shall not be made unless all persons affected have been given notice in writing of the application (except where under county court rules notice may be dispensed with) and have been afforded an opportunity to make representations to the court.

(2) An order under sub-paragraph (1) may include provision as respects any period before the making of the order (but after the coming into operation of this Schedule).

PART II

COLLECTIVE AGREEMENTS AND RULES OF UNDERTAKINGS

4 (1) This Part of this Schedule applies to –
   (a) any term of a collective agreement, including an agreement which was not intended, or is presumed not to have been intended, to be a legally enforceable contract;
   (b) any rule made by an employer for application to all or any of the persons who are employed by him or who apply to be, or are, considered by him for employment;
   (c) any rule made by a trade organisation (within the meaning of section 13) or a qualifications body (within the meaning of section 14A) for application to –
      (i) all or any of its members or prospective members; or
      (ii) all or any of the persons on whom it has conferred authorisations or qualifications or who are seeking the authorisations or qualifications which it has power to confer.

(2) Any term or rule to which this Part of this Schedule applies is void where –
   (a) the making of the collective agreement is, by reason of the inclusion of the term, unlawful by virtue of this Part of this Act;
   (b) the term or rule is included in furtherance of an act which is unlawful by virtue of this Part of this Act; or
   (c) the term or rule provides for the doing of an act which is unlawful by virtue of this Part of this Act.

(3) Sub-paragraph (2) applies whether the agreement was entered into, or the rule made, before or after the date on which this Schedule comes into operation; but in the case of an agreement entered into, or a rule made, before the date on which this Schedule comes into operation, that sub-paragraph does not apply in relation to any period before that date.

5 A disabled person to whom this paragraph applies may present a complaint to an industrial tribunal that a term or rule is void by virtue of paragraph 4 if he has reason to believe –
   (a) that the term or rule may at some future time have effect in relation to him; and
   (b) where he alleges that it is void by virtue of paragraph 4(2)(c), that –
      (i) an act for the doing of which it provides, may at some such time be done in relation to him, and
      (ii) the act would be unlawful by virtue of this Part of this Act if done in relation to him in present circumstances.

6 In the case of a complaint about –
(a) a term of a collective agreement made by or on behalf of—
    (i) an employer,
    (ii) an organisation of employers of which an employer is a member, or
    (iii) an association of such organisations of one of which an employer is a member, or

(b) a rule made by an employer within the meaning of paragraph 4(1)(b),

paragraph 5 applies to any disabled person who is, or is genuinely and actively seeking to become, one of his employees.

In the case of a complaint about a rule made by an organisation or body to which paragraph 4(1)(c) applies, paragraph 5 applies to any disabled person—

(a) who is, or is genuinely and actively seeking to become, a member of the organisation or body;

(b) on whom the organisation or body has conferred an authorisation or qualification; or

(c) who is genuinely and actively seeking an authorisation or qualification which the organisation or body has power to confer.

(1) When an industrial tribunal finds that a complaint presented to it under paragraph 5 is well-founded the tribunal shall make an order declaring that the term or rule is void.

(2) An order under sub-paragraph (1) may include provision as respects any period before the making of the order (but after the coming into operation of this Schedule).

The avoidance by virtue of paragraph 4(2) of any term or rule which provides for any person to be discriminated against shall be without prejudice to the following rights (except in so far as they enable any person to require another person to be treated less favourably than himself), namely—

(a) such of the rights of the person to be discriminated against, and

(b) such of the rights of any person who will be treated more favourably in direct or indirect consequence of the discrimination, as are conferred by or in respect of a contract made or modified wholly or partly in pursuance of, or by reference to, that term or rule.

PART III
INTERPRETATION

In this Schedule “collective agreement” means any agreement relating to one or more of the matters mentioned in Article 96(1) of the Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 (meaning of trade dispute), being an agreement made by or on behalf of one or more employers or one or more organisations of employers or associations of such organisations with one or more organisations of workers or associations of such organisations.

Any reference in this Schedule to this Part of this Act shall be taken to include a reference to Part III of this Act, to the extent that it relates to—

(a) the provision of employment services; or

(b) the provision under a group insurance arrangement of facilities by way of insurance.
SCHEDULE 3A – VALIDITY OF CONTRACTS, COLLECTIVE AGREEMENTS AND RULES OF UNDERTAKINGS

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F588 Sch. 3A paras. 11, 12 substituted (31.12.2007) for Sch. 3A para. 11 by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 30(3); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(m)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C47 Sch. 3A extends to Northern Ireland only; a separate Sch.3A for England, Wales and Scotland only repealed (1.10.2010).

[ F589 12 Where a term to which section 26(1A)(c) applies is a term in an agreement which is not a contract, Part I of this Schedule shall have effect as if the agreement were a contract.]

Textual Amendments

F589 Sch. 3A paras. 11, 12 substituted (31.12.2007) for Sch. 3A para. 11 by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 30(3); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(m)

[F590 SCHEDULE 3A Section 17C

VALIDITY OF CONTRACTS, COLLECTIVE AGREEMENTS AND RULES OF UNDERTAKINGS

Textual Amendments


PART 1

VALIDITY AND REVISION OF CONTRACTS

1 F591 ..........................................................
PART 2

COLLECTIVE AGREEMENTS AND RULES OF UNDERTAKINGS

2

F592

EXTENT INFORMATION

E159 This provision extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate Sch. 3A exists for Northern Ireland only.

TEXTUAL AMENDMENTS

F592 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

3

F593

EXTENT INFORMATION

E160 This provision extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate Sch. 3A exists for Northern Ireland only.

TEXTUAL AMENDMENTS

F593 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

4

F594

EXTENT INFORMATION

E161 This provision extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate Sch. 3A exists for Northern Ireland only.

TEXTUAL AMENDMENTS

F594 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

5

F595

EXTENT INFORMATION

E162 This provision extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate Sch. 3A exists for Northern Ireland only.
### SCHEDULE 3A – VALIDITY OF CONTRACTS, COLLECTIVE AGREEMENTS AND RULES OF UNDERTAKINGS

Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

#### Status
This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F595</strong></td>
<td>Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent Information</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>E163</strong></td>
<td>This provision extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate Sch. 3A exists for Northern Ireland only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F597</strong></td>
<td>Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent Information</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>E164</strong></td>
<td>This provision extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate Sch. 3A exists for Northern Ireland only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F599</strong></td>
<td>Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent Information</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>E165</strong></td>
<td>This provision extended to England, Wales and Scotland only; a separate Sch. 3A exists for Northern Ireland only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART 3

INTERPRETATION

10

11

12
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
SCHEDULE 4 – Premises Occupied Under Leases

Document Generated: 2020-03-13

**Status:** This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F602** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by **Equality Act 2010** (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by **S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2** (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said **S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16**); **S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f)** (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); **S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)**

---

**SCHEDULE 4**

Sections [F603]18A(5) and 27(5) [F603]31ADB.

---

**Premises Occupied Under Leases**

**Extent Information**

**E170** In its application to Northern Ireland, this Schedule has effect subject to the modifications set out in Sch. 8; see s. 70(6)

---

**Textual Amendments**


**F604** Sch. 4: words in shoulder note inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2007) by **The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment etc.) (General Qualifications Bodies) (Alteration of Premises and Enforcement) Regulations (S.I. 2007/2405)**, regs. 1(2), (6)(2)

---

**Part I**

**Occupation by** [F605]Employer etc]

---

**Textual Amendments**


**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

If any question arises as to whether the occupier has failed to comply with any duty to make reasonable adjustments, by failing to make a particular alteration to the premises, any constraint attributable to the fact that he occupies the premises under a lease is to be ignored unless he has applied to the lessor in writing for consent to the making of the alteration.

**Extent Information**

E171 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I. only.

**Textual Amendments**

F606 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2317, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)


**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C49 Sch. 4 para. 1 modified (7.6.1996) by S.I. 1996/1333, art. 4(a)

**Joining lessors in proceedings under [F608] section 17A [F609]**

(1) In any proceedings on a complaint under section 17A, in a case to which section 18A applies, the complainant or the occupier may ask the tribunal hearing the complaint to direct that the lessor be joined or sisted as a party to the proceedings.

(2) The request shall be granted if it is made before the hearing of the complaint begins.

(3) The tribunal may refuse the request if it is made after the hearing of the complaint begins.
(4) The request may not be granted if it is made after the tribunal has determined the complaint.

(5) Where a lessor has been so joined or sisted as a party to the proceedings, the tribunal may determine—
   (a) whether the lessor has—
      (i) refused consent to the alteration, or
      (ii) consented subject to one or more conditions, and
   (b) if so, whether the refusal or any of the conditions was unreasonable,

(6) If, under sub-paragraph (5), the tribunal determines that the refusal or any of the conditions was unreasonable it may take one or more of the following steps—
   (a) make such declaration as it considers appropriate;
   (b) make an order authorising the occupier to make the alteration specified in the order;
   (c) order the lessor to pay compensation to the complainant.

(7) An order under sub-paragraph (6)(b) may require the occupier to comply with conditions specified in the order.

(8) Any step taken by the tribunal under sub-paragraph (6) may be in substitution for, or in addition to, any step taken by the tribunal under [F613 section 17A(2)].

(9) If the tribunal orders the lessor to pay compensation it may not make an order under [F613 section 17A(2)] ordering the occupier to do so.

---

**Extent Information**
E172 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I. only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 51(1); see s. 70(6)

**Textual Amendments**
F610 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(i) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F611 Words in Sch. 4 para. 2(1) substituted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 40(2)(b); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 3(j) and said words substituted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 31(2)(b); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(3)(b)


Regulations

3  
\[F614\] Regulations may make provision as to circumstances in which—
(a) a lessor is to be taken, for the purposes of \[F615\] section 18A] and this Part of this Schedule to have—
   (i) withheld his consent;
   (ii) withheld his consent unreasonably;
   (iii) acted reasonably in withholding his consent;
(b) a condition subject to which a lessor has given his consent is to be taken to be reasonable;
(c) a condition subject to which a lessor has given his consent is to be taken to be unreasonable.\]

Textual Amendments
F614 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)

Modifications etc. (not altering text)
C50 Sch. 4 para. 2 modified (7.6.1996) by S.I. 1996/1333, art. 4(c)

Commencement Information
I48 Sch. 4 para. 3 wholly in force at 11.7.1996; Sch. 4 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); Sch. 4 Pt. 1 para. 3 in force (E.W.S.) at 6.6.1996 by S.I. 1996/1474, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. I; Sch. 4 Pt. 1 para. 3 in force (N.I.) at 11.7.1996 by S.R. 1996/280, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. I para. 3

Sub-leases etc.

4  
\[F616\] The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision supplementing, or modifying, the provision made by \[F617\] section 18A] or any provision made by or under this Part of this Schedule in relation to cases where the occupier occupies premises under a sub-lease or sub-tenancy.]
### Extent Information

**E174** Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I. only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 51(2); see s. 70(6).

### Textual Amendments

**F616** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)


### Commencement Information

**I49** Sch. 4 para. 4 wholly in force at 30.5.1996; Sch. 4 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent see. s. 70(3); Sch. 4 para. 4 in force (E.W.S.) at 17.5.1996 by S.I. 1996/1336, art. 3(o); Sch. 4 para. 4 in force (N.I.) at 30.5.1996 by S.R. 1996/219, art. 3(n)

## PART II

### OCCUPATION BY [F618] PERSONS SUBJECT TO A DUTY UNDER SECTION 21, 21E OR 21H]

### Textual Amendments

**F618** Sch. 4 Pt. 2: words in heading substituted (E.W.S.) (4.12.2006) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 40(3); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 4(f) and said words substituted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 31(3); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(l)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C52** Sch. 4 Pt. II modified (1.10.2004) by S.I. 2001/3253, reg. 9

**C53** Sch. 4 Pt. II modified (N.I.) (1.10.2004) by The Disability Discrimination (Providers of Services) (Adjustment of Premises) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2003 (S.R. 2003/109), reg. 9

### Failure to obtain consent to alteration

[F619] If any question arises as to whether the occupier has failed to comply with the section 21 duty [F620] or the duty imposed under section 21E or 21H, by failing to make a particular alteration to premises, any constraint attributable to the fact that he occupies the premises under a lease is to be ignored unless he has applied to the lessor in writing for consent to the making of the alteration.
6 If the occupier has applied in writing to the lessor for consent to the alteration and—
   (a) that consent has been refused, or
   (b) the lessor has made his consent subject to one or more conditions,
the occupier or a disabled person who has an interest in the proposed alteration to
the premises being made, may refer the matter to a county court or, in Scotland, to
the sheriff.

(2) In the following provisions of this Schedule “court” includes “sheriff”.

(3) On such a reference the court shall determine whether the lessor’s refusal was
unreasonable or (as the case may be) whether the condition is, or any of the conditions
are, unreasonable.

(4) If the court determines—
   (a) that the lessor’s refusal was unreasonable, or
   (b) that the condition is, or any of the conditions are, unreasonable,
it may make such declaration as it considers appropriate or an order authorising the
occupier to make the alteration specified in the order.

(5) An order under sub-paragraph (4) may require the occupier to comply with
conditions specified in the order.

Reference to court

Extant Information
E175 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to
N.I. only. Prior to that repeal, different versions of this provision had been created for N.I. and E.W.S.
respectively to reflect the different amendment history for each jurisdiction. This version is based on the
N.I. version as it stood at the date of the repeal. It does not reflect the history of E.W.S. effects prior to
the 2010 repeal, which can be found in earlier versions.

Textual Amendments
F619 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not
already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I.
2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
F620 Words in Sch. 4 para. 5 inserted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland)
Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 31(4); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(I)

6 If the occupier has applied in writing to the lessor for consent to the alteration and—
   (a) that consent has been refused, or
   (b) the lessor has made his consent subject to one or more conditions,
the occupier or a disabled person who has an interest in the proposed alteration to
the premises being made, may refer the matter to a county court or, in Scotland, to
the sheriff.

(2) In the following provisions of this Schedule “court” includes “sheriff”.

(3) On such a reference the court shall determine whether the lessor’s refusal was
unreasonable or (as the case may be) whether the condition is, or any of the conditions
are, unreasonable.

(4) If the court determines—
   (a) that the lessor’s refusal was unreasonable, or
   (b) that the condition is, or any of the conditions are, unreasonable,
it may make such declaration as it considers appropriate or an order authorising the
occupier to make the alteration specified in the order.

(5) An order under sub-paragraph (4) may require the occupier to comply with
conditions specified in the order.

Reference to court

Extant Information
E176 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I.
only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 51(3).
(4); see s. 70(6)

Textual Amendments
F621 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not
already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I.
2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
F620 Words in Sch. 4 para. 5 inserted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland)
Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 31(4); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(I)

6 If the occupier has applied in writing to the lessor for consent to the alteration and—
   (a) that consent has been refused, or
   (b) the lessor has made his consent subject to one or more conditions,
the occupier or a disabled person who has an interest in the proposed alteration to
the premises being made, may refer the matter to a county court or, in Scotland, to
the sheriff.

(2) In the following provisions of this Schedule “court” includes “sheriff”.

(3) On such a reference the court shall determine whether the lessor’s refusal was
unreasonable or (as the case may be) whether the condition is, or any of the conditions
are, unreasonable.

(4) If the court determines—
   (a) that the lessor’s refusal was unreasonable, or
   (b) that the condition is, or any of the conditions are, unreasonable,
it may make such declaration as it considers appropriate or an order authorising the
occupier to make the alteration specified in the order.

(5) An order under sub-paragraph (4) may require the occupier to comply with
conditions specified in the order.

Reference to court

Extant Information
E176 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I.
only and also has effect subject to the modifications for Northern Ireland set out in Sch. 8 para. 51(3).
(4); see s. 70(6)

Textual Amendments
F621 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not
already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I.
Joining lessors in proceedings under section 25

(1) In any proceedings on a claim under section 25 in a case to which section 27 applies, other than a claim presented as a complaint under section 25(8), the plaintiff, the pursuer or the occupier concerned may ask the court to direct that the lessor be joined or sisted as a party to the proceedings.

(2) The request shall be granted if it is made before the hearing of the claim begins.

(3) The court may refuse the request if it is made after the hearing of the claim begins.

(4) The request may not be granted if it is made after the court has determined the claim.

(5) Where a lessor has been so joined or sisted as a party to the proceedings, the court may determine—

(a) whether the lessor has—
   (i) refused consent to the alteration, or
   (ii) consented subject to one or more conditions, and

(b) if so, whether the refusal or any of the conditions was unreasonable.

(6) If, under sub-paragraph (5), the court determines that the refusal or any of the conditions was unreasonable it may take one or more of the following steps—

(a) make such declaration as it considers appropriate;

(b) make an order authorising the occupier to make the alteration specified in the order;

(c) order the lessor to pay compensation to the complainant.

(7) An order under sub-paragraph (6)(b) may require the occupier to comply with conditions specified in the order.

(8) If the court orders the lessor to pay compensation it may not order the occupier to do so.

---

Extent Information

E177 Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I. only.

Textual Amendments

F622 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(i) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)

F623 Words in Sch. 4 para. 7(1) substituted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 40(5); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 3(j) and said words substituted (N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 31(5); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(i)
### Joining lessors in proceedings relating to group insurance or employment services

**Textual Amendments**

**F624** Sch. 4 para. 7A and cross-heading inserted ((N.I.) (31.12.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 31(6); S.R. 2007/466, art. 2(2)(l))

**F625** Sch. 4 para. 7A and cross-heading inserted (E.W.S.) (5.12.2005) by Disability Discrimination Act 2005 (c. 13), ss. 19(1), 20(3)-(6), Sch. 1 para. 40(6); S.I. 2005/2774, art. 3(j)

### Regulations

8

- Regulations may make provision as to circumstances in which—
  - (a) a lessor is to be taken, for the purposes of section 27 and this Part of this Schedule to have—
    - (i) withheld his consent;
    - (ii) withheld his consent unreasonably;
    - (iii) acted reasonably in withholding his consent;
  - (b) a condition subject to which a lessor has given his consent is to be taken to be reasonable;
  - (c) a condition subject to which a lessor has given his consent is to be taken to be unreasonable.

### Extent Information

**E179** Following the repeal of this Act for E.W.S. by the Equality Act 2010, this provision now extends to N.I. only.

### Textual Amendments

**F627** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(h) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

### Commencement Information

**I50** Sch. 4 para. 8 wholly in force at 31.12.2001; Sch. 4 para. 8 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); Sch. 4 para. 8 in force (E.W.S.) (9.5.2001) by S.I. 2001/2030, art. 2(2)(i); Sch. 4 para. 8 in force (N.I.) (31.12.2001) by S.R. 2001/439, art. 2(1)(e)(i)

### Sub-leases etc.

- The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision supplementing, or modifying, the provision made by section 27 or any provision made by or under this Part of this Schedule in relation to cases where the occupier occupies premises under a sub-lease or sub-tenancy.
PART 3

OCCUPATION BY EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS

Textual Amendments

Sch. 4 Pt. 3 (paras. 10-14) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 31(2), Sch. 6 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

Sch. 4 Pt. 3 (paras. 10-14) modified (28.6.2002) by S.I. 2002/1458, reg. 7 (which Regulations were revoked (1.5.2005) by S.I. 2005/1070, reg. 8)

Sch. 4 Pt. 3 modified (1.5.2005) by The Disability Discrimination (Educational Institutions) (Alteration of Leasehold Premises) Regulations 2005, {reg. 7}

Failure to obtain consent

Sch. 4 para. 9 wholly in force at 31.12.2001; Sch. 4 para. 9 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 70(3); Sch. 4 para. 9 in force (E.W.S.) (9.5.2001) by S.I. 2001/2030, art. 2(c)(ii); Sch. 4 para. 9 in force (N.I.) (31.12.2001) by S.R. 2001/439, art. 2(1)(c)(ii)

Reference to court

Sch. 4 para. 9 in force (E.W.S.) (9.5.2001) by S.I. 2001/2030, art. 2(c)(ii)
Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F632 Sch. 4 Pt. 3 (paras. 10-14) inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 31(2), Sch. 6 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
F633 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Joining lessors in proceedings under section 28V

F634

F635

Regulations

F636

F637

Sub-leases etc.

F638

F639
PART 4

OCCUPATION BY GENERAL QUALIFICATIONS BODIES

Textual Amendments

F640 Sch. 4 Pt. 4 inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2007) by The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (Amendment etc.) (General Qualifications Bodies) (Alteration of Premises and Enforcement) Regulations (S.I. 2007/2405), regs. 1(2), 6(3) (with regs. 8-13)

Failure to obtain consent to alteration

15 F641 ...........................................................

Textual Amendments

F641 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Reference to court

16 F642 ...........................................................

Textual Amendments

F642 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Joining lessors in proceedings under section 31ADA

17 F643 ...........................................................

Textual Amendments

F643 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
SCHEDULE 4A

RESPONSIBLE BODIES FOR SCHOOLS

Textual Amendments

F644 Sch. 4A inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 11(2), Sch. 2 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

1

Textual Amendments

F645 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

2

Textual Amendments

F646 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

SCHEDULE 4B

RESPONSIBLE BODIES FOR EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS

Textual Amendments

F647 Sch. 4B inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 26(2), Sch. 4 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

1

Textual Amendments

F648 Sch. 4B inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 26(2), Sch. 4 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

F649 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

2
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)
SCHEDULE 4C – MODIFICATIONS OF CHAPTER 2 OF PART 4

Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F650 Sch. 4B inserted (E.W.S.) (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 26(2), Sch. 4 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1
F651 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F652 SCHEDULE 4C
MODIFICATIONS OF CHAPTER 2 OF PART 4

Textual Amendments


PART 1
MODIFICATIONS FOR ENGLAND AND WALES – FURTHER EDUCATION, ETC PROVIDED BY [F653 LOCAL AUTHORITIES]
|  |  
|---|---|
| **Textual Amendments** |  
| **F656** | Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by **Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)**, 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h) |
|  |  
| **Textual Amendments** |  
| **F657** | Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by **Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)**, 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h) |
|  |  
| **Textual Amendments** |  
| **F658** | Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by **Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)**, 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h) |
|  |  
| **Textual Amendments** |  
| **F659** | Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by **Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)**, 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h) |
PART 2
MODIFICATIONS FOR SCOTLAND – FURTHER EDUCATION

13

F666 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 2, (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

14

F667 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 2, (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

15

F668 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 2, (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

16

F669 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 2, (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

17

F670 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 2, (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
PART 2A

MODIFICATIONS FOR SCOTLAND – RECREATIONAL OR TRAINING FACILITIES

18

F671

Textual Amendments

F671 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A–49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

19

F672

Textual Amendments

F672 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A–49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

20

F673

Textual Amendments

F673 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A–49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

21

F674

Textual Amendments

F674 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A–49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

22

F675

Textual Amendments

F675 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A–49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I.
Status: This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)

2010/2279, Sch. 2 (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(i) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

SCHEDULE 5 – The National Disability Council

Textual Amendments

F676 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(i) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Textual Amendments

F677 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(i) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

SCHEDULE 5

THE NATIONAL DISABILITY COUNCIL

Textual Amendments

F678 Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix

F679 Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

Status

Textual Amendments

F680 Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.
Textual Amendments

F681 Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

[F682 Procedure]

Textual Amendments

F682 Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

F683

Textual Amendments

F683 Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

[F684 Membership]

Textual Amendments

F684 Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

F685

Textual Amendments

F685 Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

[F686 Term of office of members]

Textual Amendments

F686 Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.
Textual Amendments

Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

Remuneration

Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

Staff

Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

Supplementary regulation-making power

Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.
Textual Amendments

F693 Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

Schedule 6

Section 70(4).

Consequential Amendments

Extent Information

E181 In its application to Northern Ireland, this Schedule has effect as substituted by Sch. 8 para. 53, and the Schedule is amended (N.I.) (24.9.1996) by S.I. 1996/1919 (N.I. 16), art. 257, Sch. 3 (with Sch. 2)

Employment and Training Act 1973 (c. 50)

Textual Amendments

F694 Sch. 5 repealed (E.W.S.) (25.4.2000) by 1999 c. 17, s. 14(2), Sch. 5 (with s. 15); S.I. 2000/880, art. 2, Sch. 2 Appendix and Sch. 5 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch.

E182 In its application to Northern Ireland, this Schedule has effect as substituted by Sch. 8 para. 53, and Sch. 6 para. 1 is repealed (N.I.) (24.9.1996) by S.I. 1996/1919 (N.I. 16), art. 257, Sch. 3 (with Sch. 2)

Textual Amendments

F696 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
Employment Protection (Consolidation) Act 1978 (c. 44)

2

Extent Information
E183 In its application to Northern Ireland, this Schedule has effect as substituted by Sch. 8 para. 53

Textual Amendments
F697 Sch. 6 para. 2 repealed (E.W.S.) (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 17, ss. 45, 46, Sch. 3 Pt. I (with s. 38)

Companies Act 1985 (c. 6)

4

Extent Information
E185 In its application to Northern Ireland, this Schedule has effect as substituted by Sch. 8 para. 53

Textual Amendments
F699 Sch. 6 para. 4 repealed (6.4.2008) by Companies Act 2006 (c. 46), ss. 1295, 1300, Sch. 16; S.I. 2007/3495, art. 8, Sch. 2 (with arts. 7, 12, Sch. 4) (as amended by S.I. 2008/674, S.I. 2008/1886 and S.I. 2008/2860)

Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (c. 42)

5

Extent Information
E186 In its application to Northern Ireland, this Schedule has effect as substituted by Sch. 8 para. 53

Textual Amendments
F700 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990 (c. 35)

SCHEDULE 7

REPEALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Short title</th>
<th>Extent of repeal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7 &amp; 8 Geo. 6 c. 10.</td>
<td>The Disabled Persons (Employment) Act 1944.</td>
<td>Section 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1978 c. 44.</td>
<td>The Employment Protection (Consolidation) Act 1978.</td>
<td>In Schedule 13, in paragraph 20(3), the word “or” in the definitions of “relevant complaint of dismissal”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SCHEDULE 8

MODIFICATIONS OF THIS ACT IN ITS APPLICATION TO NORTHERN IRELAND

Extent Information

E189 Sch. 8 extends to the United Kingdom but the operation of Sch. 8 is limited by application as mentioned in s. 70(6).

1 [F705 In its application to Northern Ireland this Act shall have effect subject to the following modifications.]

Textual Amendments

F702 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F703 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

2 [F704 (1) F705 .........................

(2) In section 3 for subsections (4) to (12) substitute—

“(4) In preparing a draft of any guidance, the Department shall consult such persons as it considers appropriate.

(5) Where the Department proposes to issue any guidance, the Department shall publish a draft of it, consider any representations that are made to the Department about the draft and, if the Department thinks it appropriate, modify its proposals in the light of any of those representations.

(6) If the Department decides to proceed with any proposed guidance, the Department shall lay a draft of it before the Assembly.
(7) If, within the statutory period, the Assembly resolves not to approve the draft, the Department shall take no further steps in relation to the proposed guidance.

(8) If no such resolution is made within the statutory period, the Department shall issue the guidance in the form of its draft.

(9) The guidance shall come into force on such date as the Department may by order appoint.

(10) Subsection (7) does not prevent a new draft of the proposed guidance being laid before the Assembly.

(11) The Department may—
(a) from time to time revise the whole or any part of any guidance and re-issue it;
(b) by order revoke any guidance.

(12) In this section—
“the Department” means the Department of Economic Development;
“guidance” means guidance issued by the Department under this section and includes guidance which has been revised and re-issued;
“statutory period” has the meaning assigned to it by section 41(2) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954.”

Textual Amendments
F704 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(b) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
F705 Sch. 8 para. 2(1) repealed (31.10.2007) by The Disability Discrimination (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/312 (N.I. 1)), arts. 1, 19, Sch. 1 para. 32(4), Sch. 2; S.R. 2007/430, art. 2(b)(d)
Textual Amendments

F708 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F709 Sch. 8 para. 4(1) omitted (21.2.2004 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.10.2004) by virtue of the Disability Discrimination Act (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1, {28(4)}

F710 Sch. 8 para. 4(2)(3) repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), art. 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch. Appendix

Extent Information

E190 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

Textual Amendments

F711 Sch. 8 para. 5 omitted (21.2.2004 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.10.2004) by virtue of the Disability Discrimination Act (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1, {28(4)}

F712 (1) F713

(2) F714

Textual Amendments

F712 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F713 Sch. 8 para. 6(1) omitted (21.2.2004 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.10.2004) by virtue of the Disability Discrimination Act (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1, {28(4)}

F714 Sch. 8 para. 6(2) repealed (N.I.) (1.1.1999) by S.I. 1998/1265 (N.I. 8), art. 16, Sch. 2; S.R. 1998/274, art. 2(3), Sch. 3

Textual Amendments

F715 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F716 Sch. 8 para. 7 omitted (21.2.2004 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.10.2004) by virtue of the Disability Discrimination Act (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1, {28(4)}
Textual Amendments

F717 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F718 Sch. 8 para. 8 omitted (21.2.2004 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.10.2004) by virtue of the Disability Discrimination Act (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1, {28(4)}

9 | F719(1) In section 19(3)(g) for “section 2 of the Employment and Training Act 1973” substitute “sections 1 and 2 of the Employment and Training Act (Northern Ireland) 1950”.
   (2) F720 ........................................
   (3) F720 ........................................]

Textual Amendments

F719 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F720 Sch. 8 para. 9(2)(3) repealed (1.9.2005) by The Special Educational Needs and Disability (Northern Ireland) Order (S.I. 2005/1117 (N.I. 6)), arts. 1, 50(2), {Sch. 6}; S.R. 2005/337, art. 2, Sch.

Textual Amendments

F721 In section 20(7) for paragraphs (b) and (c) substitute
   (b) functions conferred by or under Part VIII of the Mental Health (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 are exercisable in relation to a disabled person’s property or affairs.”.]

Textual Amendments

F722 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

11 | F723 In section 22(4) and (6) omit “or (in Scotland) the subject of”.

Textual Amendments

F723(1) In section 25(1) omit “or (in Scotland) in reparation”.
   (2) In section 25(3) for “England and Wales” substitute “Northern Ireland”.
   (3) Omit section 25(4).
(4) In section 25(5) omit the words from “or” to the end.

---

Textual Amendments

F723 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

13 [F724 In section 26(3) omit “or a sheriff court”.]

---

Textual Amendments

F724 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F725 F726 14 ........................................

---

Textual Amendments

F725 Sch. 8 para. 14 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), art. 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch. Appendix

F726 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

15 [F727 Omit sections 29, 30 and 31.]

---

Textual Amendments

F727 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

16] F728(1) In section 32(1) for “Secretary of State” substitute “Department of the Environment”.

(2) In section 32(5) for the definition of “taxi” substitute—

““taxi” means a vehicle which—

(a) is licensed under Article 61 of the Road Traffic (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 to stand or ply for hire; and

(b) seats not more than 8 passengers in addition to the driver”.

]
Textual Amendments

**F728** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)

17 [**F729**In section 33, for “Secretary of State”, wherever it occurs, substitute “Department of the Environment.”]

Textual Amendments

**F729** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)

18 [**F730**For section 34 substitute—

**“ New licences conditional on compliance with accessibility taxi regulations**

**34** “ New licences conditional on compliance with accessibility taxi regulations

(1) The Department of the Environment shall not grant a public service vehicle licence under Article 61 of the Road Traffic (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 for a taxi unless the vehicle conforms with those provisions of the taxi accessibility regulations with which it will be required to conform if licensed.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply if such a licence was in force with respect to the vehicle at any time during the period of 28 days immediately before the day on which the licence is granted.

(3) The Department of the Environment may by order provide for subsection (2) to cease to have effect on such date as may be specified in the order.”]

Textual Amendments

**F730** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)

19 [**F731**Omit section 35.]

Textual Amendments

**F731** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(b)
20 F732 In section 36(7) for “licensing authority” substitute “ Department of the Environment ”.

Textual Amendments
F732 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

21 F733(1) In section 37(5) and (6) for “licensing authority” substitute “ Department of the Environment ”.
(2) In section 37(9) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Department of the Environment ”.

Textual Amendments
F733 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)


F735 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

22 F736(1) In section 38(1) for “a licensing authority” substitute “ the Department of the Environment ”.

Textual Amendments
F736 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)
(2) In section 38(2) for “licensing authority concerned” substitute “Department of the Environment”.

(3) [F737] .................................]

Textual Amendments

F736 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F737 Sch. 8 para. 22(3) repealed (N.I.) (31.10.2016) by Justice Act (Northern Ireland) 2015 c. 9 (N.I.), s. 106(2), Sch. 1 para. 104(2) (with Sch. 8 para. 1); S.R. 2016/387, art. 2(k) (with art. 3)

23 [F738] Omit section 39.]

Textual Amendments

F738 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

24[F739] (1) In section 40 for “Secretary of State” wherever it occurs substitute “Department of the Environment”.

(2) In section 40(5) for the definition of “public service vehicle” substitute—

“public service vehicle” means a vehicle which—

(a) seats more than 8 passengers in addition to the driver; and

(b) is a public service vehicle for the purposes of the Road Traffic (Northern Ireland) Order 1981;”.

(3) In section 40(7) for the words from “the Disabled” to the end substitute “such representative organisations as it thinks fit.”]

Textual Amendments

F739 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

25[F740] (1) In section 41(2) for “Secretary of State” substitute “Department of the Environment”.

(2) In section 41 for subsections (3) and (4) substitute—

“(3) Any person who uses a regulated public service vehicle in contravention of this section is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.”]
F740 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16; S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

26[ F741 (1) In section 42 for “Secretary of State” wherever it occurs substitute “ Department of the Environment ”.

(2) In section 42(1) for “he” substitute “ it ”.

(3) In section 42(6) for “his” substitute “ its ”.]

F742 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16; S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

27[ F742 (1) In section 43 for “Secretary of State” wherever it occurs substitute “ Department of the Environment ”.]

F743 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16; S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

28[ F743 (1) In section 44 for “Secretary of State” wherever it occurs substitute “ Department of the Environment ”.

(2) In section 44(2) for “him” substitute “ it ”.

(3) In section 44(6) for “he” substitute “ it ” and for “his” substitute “ its ”.]

F744 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16; S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

29[ F744 (1) In section 45 for “Secretary of State” wherever it occurs substitute “ Department of the Environment ”.

(2) In section 45(2) for “him” substitute “ it ” and at the end add “ of Northern Ireland ”.

(3) In section 45(4) for “he” substitute “ it ”.]
Textual Amendments

F744 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

30.f F745 (1) In section 46 for “Secretary of State” wherever it occurs substitute “Department of the Environment”.

(2) In section 46(6) in the definition of “rail vehicle” for the words “on any railway, tramway or prescribed system” substitute “by rail”.

(3) Omit section 46(7).

(4) In section 46(11) for the words from “the Disabled” to the end substitute “such representative organisations as it thinks fit”.

Textual Amendments

F745 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

31.f F746 (1) In section 47 for “Secretary of State” wherever it occurs substitute “Department of the Environment”.

(2) In section 47(3) for the words “the Disabled Persons Transport Advisory Committee and such other persons as he” substitute “such persons as it” and for “he” substitute “it”.

Textual Amendments

F746 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

32.f F747 Omit section 48(3).
Textual Amendments

F748 Sch. 8 para. 33 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), art. 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2 Sch. Appendix

F749 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010) (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

34(1) .................................................. 

(2) .................................................. 

(3) In section 51(4) for “a county court or a sheriff court” substitute “ or a county court”.

(4) In section 51(6) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “ a Northern Ireland department”.

Textual Amendments

F750 Sch. 8 para. 34 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000 in relation to sub-paras. (1)(2) and otherwise prosp.) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), art. 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch. Appendix

F751 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

For section 52 substitute—

“ Further provisions about codes issued under section 51.

52 “ Further provisions about codes issued under section 51.

(1) In this section—

“proposal” means a proposal made by the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland to a Northern Ireland department under section 51;

“responsible department”—

(a) in relation to a proposal, means the Northern Ireland department to which the proposal is made,

(b) in relation to a code, means the Northern Ireland department by which the code is issued; and

“statutory period” has the meaning assigned to it by section 41(2) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954.

(2) In preparing any proposal, the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland shall consult—

(a) such persons (if any) as the responsible department has specified in making its request to the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland; and
(b) such other persons (if any) as [F754 the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland] considers appropriate.

(3) Before making any proposal [F754 the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland] shall publish a draft, consider any representations made to it about the draft and, if it thinks it appropriate, modify its proposal in the light of any of those representations.

(4) Where [F754 the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland] makes any proposal, the responsible department may—
   (a) approve it;
   (b) approve it subject to such modifications as that department thinks appropriate; or
   (c) refuse to approve it.

(5) Where the responsible department approves any proposal (with or without modifications) that department shall prepare a draft of the proposed code and lay it before the Assembly.

(6) If, within the statutory period, the Assembly resolves not to approve the draft, the responsible department shall take no further steps in relation to the proposed code.

(7) If no such resolution is made within the statutory period, the responsible department shall issue the code in the form of its draft.

(8) The code shall come into force on such date as the responsible department may appoint by order.

(9) Subsection (6) does not prevent a new draft of the proposed code from being laid before the Assembly.

(10) If the responsible department refuses to approve a proposal, that department shall give [F754 the Equality Commission for Northern Ireland] a written statement of the department’s reasons for not approving it.

(11) The responsible department may by order revoke a code.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>F752</strong> Sch. 8 para. 35: s. 52 (as substituted by this provision) repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000 in relation to s. 52(1)-(10) (with the exception of para. (b) in the definition of &quot;responsible Department&quot; in (1)) otherwise prosp.) by virtue of S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), arts. 1(2), 16, Sch. 2 (with arts. 11(2)(3), 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch. Appendix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F753</strong> Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F754</strong> Words in Sch. 8 substituted (1.10.1999) by 1998 c. 47, s. 99, Sch. 13 para. 16(2)(a) (with s. 95); S.I. 1999/2204, art. 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

36| In section 53 for “Secretary of State” wherever it occurs substitute “ Department of Economic Development ”.

(2) In section 53(1) for “he” substitute “it”. 

---

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995. (See end of Document for details)
(3) In section 53(5) for “a county court or a sheriff court” substitute “or a county court.”

**Textual Amendments**

F755 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F756 For section 54 substitute—

**“Further provisions about codes issued under section 53.”**

54 “Further provisions about codes issued under section 53.

(1) In preparing a draft of any code under section 53, the Department shall consult such organisations representing the interests of employers or of disabled persons in, or seeking, employment as the Department considers appropriate.

(2) Where the Department proposes to issue a code, the Department shall publish a draft of the code, consider any representations that are made to the Department about the draft and, if the Department thinks it appropriate, modify its proposals in the light of any of those representations.

(3) If the Department decides to proceed with the code, the Department shall lay a draft of it before the Assembly.

(4) If, within the statutory period, the Assembly resolves not to approve the draft, the Department shall take no further steps in relation to the proposed code.

(5) If no such resolution is made within the statutory period, the Department shall issue the code in the form of its draft.

(6) The code shall come into force on such date as the Department may appoint by order.

(7) Subsection (4) does not prevent a new draft of the proposed code from being laid before the Assembly.

(8) The Department may by order revoke a code.

(9) In this section—

“the Department” means the Department of Economic Development; and

“statutory period” has the meaning assigned to it by section 41(2) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954.”]
38  [F757]In section 56(2) and (4) for “Secretary of State” substitute “Department of Economic Development.”]

Textual Amendments

F757 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

39  [F758]In section 59(1) after “Crown” where it twice occurs insert “ or a Northern Ireland department.”]

Textual Amendments

F758 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

40[F759](1) In section 60(1) to (3) for “Secretary of State” wherever it occurs substitute “Department of Economic Development” and for “he” and “him” wherever they occur substitute “it”.

(2) In section 60(4) for “Treasury” substitute “Department of Finance and Personnel in Northern Ireland”.

(3) For section 60(6) substitute—

“(6) The Department of Economic Development may by order repeal section 17 of, and Schedule 2 to, the Disabled Persons (Employment) Act (Northern Ireland) 1945 (district advisory committees).”.

(4) In section 60(7) omit “paragraph (b) of”, for “1944” substitute “1945” and omit “in each case”.

(5) In section 60, omit subsection (8).]

Textual Amendments

F759 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

41  [F760]For section 61 substitute—


(1) Section 15 of the Disabled Persons (Employment) Act (Northern Ireland) 1945 (which gives the Department of Economic Development power to make arrangements for the provision of supported employment) is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (5).

(2) In subsection (1)—
(a) for “persons registered as handicapped by disablement” substitute “disabled persons”;
(b) for “their disablement” substitute “their disability”; and
(c) for “are not subject to disablement” substitute “do not have a disability”.

(3) In subsection (2) for the words from “any of one or more companies” to “so required and prohibited” substitute “any company, association or body”.

(4) After subsection (2) insert—

“(2A) The only kind of company which the Department itself may form in exercising its powers under this section is a company which is—
(a) required by its constitution to apply its profits, if any, or other income in promoting its objects; and
(b) prohibited by its constitution from paying any dividend to its members.”.

(5) After subsection (5) insert—

“(5A) For the purposes of this section—
(a) a person is a disabled person if he is a disabled person for the purposes of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995; and
(b) “disability” has the same meaning as in that Act.”.

(6) The provisions of section 16 of the Act of 1945 (preference to be given under section 15 of that Act to ex-service men and women) shall become subsection (1) of that section and at the end insert—

“and whose disability is due to that service.

(2) or the purposes of subsection (1) of this section, a disabled person’s disability shall be treated as due to service of a particular kind only in such circumstances as may be prescribed.”

(7) The following provisions of the Act of 1945 shall cease to have effect—
(a) section 1 (definition of “disabled person”);
(b) sections 2 to 4 (training for disabled persons);
(c) sections 6 to 8 (the register of disabled persons);
(d) sections 9 to 11 (obligations on employers with substantial staffs to employ quota of registered persons);
(e) section 12 (the designated employment scheme for persons registered as handicapped by disablement);
(f) section 13 (interpretation of provisions repealed by this Act);
(g) section 14 (records to be kept by employer);
(h) section 19 (proceedings in relation to offences);
(j) sections 21 and 22 (supplementary).

(8) Any statutory provision in which “disabled person” is defined by reference to the Act of 1945 shall be construed as if that expression had the same meaning as in this Act.]
Ireland and in relation to the Crown in right of Her Majesty’s Government in the United Kingdom ”;

(c) \[F766\] ..................................  

(d) \[F766\] ..................................  

(e) in the definition of “service for purposes of a Minister of the Crown or government department” at the end add “or service as the head of a Northern Ireland department ”.]

\[\text{Textual Amendments}\]

\[F764\] Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, \[\text{art. 16}\]); S.I. 2010/2317, \[\text{art. 2(h)}\] (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, \[\text{art. 2(h)}\]

\[F765\] Sch. 8 para. 44(3) omitted (21.2.2004 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.10.2004) by virtue of the Disability Discrimination Act (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1, \{28(4)\}

\[F766\] Sch. 8 para. 44(4)(c)(d) omitted (21.2.2004 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.10.2004) by virtue of the Disability Discrimination Act (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) (S.R. 2004/55), regs. 1, \{28(4)\}

\[45\] \[\text{\[F767\]Omit section 65.}\]

\[\text{Textual Amendments}\]

\[F767\] Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, \[\text{art. 16}\]); S.I. 2010/2317, \[\text{art. 2(h)}\] (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, \[\text{art. 2(h)}\]

\[46\] \[\text{\[F768\]For section 67 substitute—}\]

``
\text{`` Regulations and orders etc.}\n``

\[67\] \text{`` Regulations and orders etc.}\n
(1) Any power under this Act to make regulations or orders shall be exercisable by statutory rule for the purposes of the Statutory Rules (Northern Ireland) Order 1979.

(2) Any such power may be exercised to make different provision for different cases, including different provision for different areas or localities.

(3) Any such power, includes power—

(a) to make such incidental, supplementary, consequential or transitional provision as appears to the Northern Ireland department exercising the power to be expedient; and

(b) to provide for a person to exercise a discretion in dealing with any matter.

(4) \[F769\] ..................................  
(5) Any other order made under this Act, other than an order under section 3(9), [F770 54A(6)(a)] or 70(3), and any regulations made under this Act shall be subject to negative resolution within the meaning of section 41(6) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954 as if they were statutory instruments within the meaning of that Act.

(6) Section 41(3) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954 shall apply in relation to any instrument or document which by virtue of this Act is required to be laid before the Assembly as if it were a statutory instrument or statutory document within the meaning of that Act.

(7) Subsection (1) does not require an order under section 43 which applies only to a specified vehicle, or to vehicles of a specified person, to be made by statutory rule.

(8) Nothing in section 40(6) or 46(5) affects the powers conferred by subsections (2) and (3).”

---

**Textual Amendments**

F768 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F769 Sch. 8 para. 46: s. 67(4) (as it has effect in its application to Northern Ireland by virtue of this provision) repealed (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110, art. 16, Sch. 2; S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch. Appendix

F770 Sch. 8 para. 46: words in s. 67(5) (as it has effect in its application to Northern Ireland by virtue of this provision) substituted (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110, art. 15 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art.2, Sch.

47[F771(1) For section 68(1) substitute—

“(1) In this Act—

“accessibility certificate” means a certificate issued under section 41(1)(a);

“act” includes a deliberate omission;

“the Agency” means the Labour Relations Agency;

“approval certificate” means a certificate issued under section 42(4);

“the Assembly” means the Northern Ireland Assembly;

“benefits”, in Part II, has the meaning given in section 4(4);

“the Department of Economic Development” means the Department of Economic Development in Northern Ireland;

“the Department of the Environment” means the Department of the Environment for Northern Ireland;

“the Department of Health and Social Services” means the Department of Health and Social Services for Northern Ireland;

“employment” means, subject to any prescribed provision, employment under a contract of service or of apprenticeship or a contract personally to do work and related expressions are to be construed accordingly;
“employment at an establishment in Northern Ireland” is to be construed in accordance with subsections (2) to (5);

“enactment” means any statutory provision within the meaning of section 1(f) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954;

“government department” means a Northern Ireland department or a department of the Government of the United Kingdom;

“Minister of the Crown” includes the Treasury;

“Northern Ireland department” includes (except in sections 51 and 52) the head of a Northern Ireland department;

“occupational pension scheme” has the same meaning as in the Pension Schemes (Northern Ireland) Act 1993;

“premises”, includes land of any description;

“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations;

“profession” includes any vocation or occupation;

“provider of services” has the meaning given in section 19(2)(b);

“public service vehicle” and “regulated public service vehicle” have the meaning given in section 40;

“PSV accessibility regulations” means regulations made under section 40(1);

“rail vehicle” and “regulated rail vehicle” have the meaning given in section 46;

“rail vehicle accessibility regulations” means regulations made under section 46(1);

“regulations” means—

(a) in Parts I and II of this Act, section 66, the definition of “employment” above and subsections (3) and (4) below, regulations made by the Department of Economic Development;

(b) in Part V of this Act, regulations made by the Department of the Environment;

(c) in any other provision of this Act, regulations made by the Department of Health and Social Services.

“section 6 duty” means any duty imposed by or under section 6;

“section 15 duty” means any duty imposed by or under section 15;

“section 21 duty” means any duty imposed by or under section 21;

“taxi” and “regulated taxi” have the meaning given in section 32;

“taxi accessibility regulations” means regulations made under section 32(1);

“trade” includes any business;

“trade organisation” has the meaning given in section 13;

“vehicle examiner” means an officer of the Department of the Environment authorised by that Department for the purposes of sections 41 and 42.”.

\[^\text{f772}\]^ (2) In section 68—

(a) for subsection (2) substitute—

(2) Where an employee does his work wholly outside Northern Ireland, his employment is not to be treated as being work at an establishment in Northern Ireland. “; and
(b) in subsections (3) and (4) for “Great Britain” wherever it occurs substitute “Northern Ireland”.]

Textual Amendments

F771 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F772 Sch. 8 para. 47(2) substituted (N.I.) (9.3.2000) by S.R. 2000/8, reg. 3

48[ F773(1) In section 70(3) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Department of Health and Social Services ”.

(2) In section 70(8) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “ a Northern Ireland department ” and for “him” substitute “ it ”.]

Textual Amendments

F773 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

49[ F774(1) In Schedule 1 in paragraph 7(1) for “Act 1944” substitute “ Act (Northern Ireland) 1945 ”.

(2) In Schedule 1 in paragraph 7(7) for “1944” substitute “ 1945 ”.]

Textual Amendments

F774 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

50[ F775(1) In Schedule 3 in paragraph 1—

(a) for “a conciliation officer” wherever it occurs substitute “ the Agency ”;

(b) in sub-paragraphs (1) and (4) for “he” substitute “ it ”;

(c) in sub-paragraph (3) for “the conciliation officer” substitute “ the Agency ”.

(2) In Schedule 3 for paragraph 4(1) substitute—

“(1) In any proceedings under section 8—

(a) a certificate signed by or on behalf of a Minister of the Crown or a Northern Ireland department and certifying that any conditions or requirements specified in the certificate were imposed by that Minister or that department (as the case may be) and were in operation at a time or throughout a time so specified; or

(b) a certificate signed by or on behalf of the Secretary of State and certifying that an act specified in the certificate was done for the purpose of safeguarding national security,
shall be conclusive evidence of the matters certified.”.

(3) In Schedule 3 in paragraph 6(1) omit “or a sheriff court”.

(4) In Schedule 3 for paragraph 8(1) substitute—

“(1) In any proceedings under section 25—

(a) a certificate signed by or on behalf of a Minister of the Crown or a Northern Ireland department and certifying that any conditions or requirements specified in the certificate were imposed by that Minister or that department (as the case may be) and were in operation at a time or throughout a time so specified; or

(b) a certificate signed by or on behalf of the Secretary of State and certifying that an act specified in the certificate was done for the purpose of safeguarding national security,

shall be conclusive evidence of the matters certified.”.

---

Textual Amendments

F775 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F776 (1) In Schedule 4 in paragraphs 2(1) and (5) and 7(1) and (5) omit “or sisted”.

(2) In Schedule 4 in paragraph 4 for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Department of Economic Development ”.

(3) In Schedule 4 in paragraph 6(1) omit “or, in Scotland, to the sheriff”.

(4) In Schedule 4 omit paragraph 6(2).

(5) In Schedule 4 in paragraph 9 for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Department of Health and Social Services ”.

---

Textual Amendments

F776 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

F777 Sch. 8 para. 52 repealed (N.I.) (25.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/1110 (N.I. 2), art. 16, Sch. 2 (with art. 17); S.R. 2000/140, art. 2, Sch. Appendix

F778 Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I.
For Schedules 6 and 7 substitute—

“SCHEDULE 6

CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

The Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1976 (NI 16)

1 In Article 68(6) of the Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1976 (reinstatement or re-engagement of dismissed employees)—

(a) in the definition of “relevant complaint of dismissal”, omit “or” and at the end insert “or a complaint under section 8 of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995 arising out of a dismissal”;

(b) in the definition of “relevant conciliation powers”, omit “or” and at the end insert “or paragraph 1 of Schedule 3 to the Disability Discrimination Act 1995”;

(c) in the definition of “relevant compromise contract” for “or Article” substitute “Article” and at the end insert “or section 9(2) of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995”.

The Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 (NI 6)

3 ..................................................
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Act/Order</th>
<th>Section/Article</th>
<th>Textual Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1976</td>
<td>The Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1976.</td>
<td></td>
<td>In Article 68(6) the word “or” in the definitions of “relevant complaint of dismissal” and “relevant conciliation powers”.[1]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Textual Amendments**

**F779** Act repealed (E.W.S.) (1.10.2010 (except for the repeal of ss. 49A-49D) and 5.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), 216(3), Sch. 27 Pt. 1 (as substituted (1.10.2010) by S.I. 2010/2279, Sch. 2) (with ss. 6(4), 205, and with amendments and savings in the said S.I. 2010/2279, art. 16); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(15)(f) (with arts. 4-25, Schs. 1-16); S.I. 2011/1066, art. 2(h)

**F780** Sch. 8 para. 53: para. 3 of the substituted Sch. 6 repealed (1.10.2009) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1941), art. 2(2), Sch. 2 (with art. 10)
### Status:
This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

### Changes to legislation:
There are currently no known outstanding effects for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995.